

مكتبة الألفريد الإلكترونية

قسم - التعليم

فني سوريا

حلول وترجمة جميع مواضيع
كتاب الطالب وكتاب الأنشطة 1×2
لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية - بكالوريا سوريا
للعلمي والأدبي
1×2
المدرس إبراهيم أحمد غنم

مكتبة الألفريد - سوريا
t.me/Alfreedsyria

تابع أحدث المواضيع من خلال قناتنا على التلجرام

بالضغط على التالي يمكنكم الانتقال إلى صفحات :

- * كتب ونوطات وملخصات وسلام تصحيح التاسع - سوريا
- * كتب ونوطات وملخصات وسلام تصحيح البكالوريا - سوريا
- * كل ما يتعلق بالمنهاج السوري لجميع الصفوف
- * جميع كتب المناهج الدراسية الجديدة - سوريا

English for Starters 12

Activity & Students' book



كامل كتاب الأنشطة و كتاب الطالب مع الترجمة ، الحل و المواضيع

إعداد المدرس : ابراهيم أحمد غنم

2020

STUDENTS' BOOK
Unit 1
The law

P - 10

Match these words from the talk with their meanings.

يفرض - يلزم - ينفذ	a enforce	9 to put into practice / carry out
يحكم	b govern	5 to control
مذنب	c guilty	6 responsible for a crime
بريء	d innocent	1 not responsible for a crime
هيئة المحلفين	e jury	3 a group of people in court who decide whether someone is guilty
قانوني - شرعي	f legal	8 relating to the law
مبدأ - قاعدة	g principle	4 rule / belief
ملكية - عقار	h property	2 something valuable which belongs to someone
يثبت	i prove	7 to show that something is true

P - 12 Vocabulary**Words with more than one meaning****1. Find the correct definitions from the list below for the repeated words in each pair a-f.****a society**1 When I was a student, I was a member of the Law **Society**.

club or organisation for people with the same interest

2 A strong legal system is important in a modern **society**.

all the people living in a country

b ruler1 Tutankhamun was a very famous Egyptian **ruler**.

someone in charge of a country, such as a king

2 I'm doing my maths homework – can I borrow your **ruler** please?

straight piece of wood or plastic to help you draw straight lines

c property1 Taking another person's **property** is theft.

something that belongs to someone

2 The price of **property** in the city has increased dramatically this year.

land and buildings

d court1 In the final of the championship, the players were on **court** for two hours.

area where people play games like tennis and squash

2 Three men will appear in **court** tomorrow accused of dangerous driving.

place where trials take place

e fine

1 He did a **fine** job of washing my car.

very good

2 He had to pay a **fine** because he was driving without insurance.

money people pay as a punishment for doing something illegal

f type

1 Secretaries used to spend most of their time **typing** letters and reports.

write using a machine

2 What **type** of music do you like best?

kind / sort

2. Use a dictionary to check the different meanings of these words.

a mean	يقصد - يعني - بخيل
b note	ملاحظة - مذكرة - صييت
c case	حقيية - قضية
d spring	نوع - نابض - الربيع
e row	خام - طازج - رعاغ

Nouns and Adjectives

3. Complete these sentences with adjectives derived from the nouns in brackets. You may need to use a dictionary.

- a- Many people believe that the worst crimes are murder and other **violent** acts. (violence)
- b- There would be a **chaotic** situation in society if there were no **legal** systems. (chaos / law)
- c- He left court a free man because he had proved that he was **innocent**. The jury said he was **not guilty**. (innocence / not guilt).

Grammar

Linking the past with the present (The Present Perfect)

1- Underline the present perfect simple and continuous verbs in these sentences

- a. Every country has developed its own code of law over hundreds or thousands of years.
- b. They have broken the law – they should be punished.
- c. I've been reading a book about the history of law-making.
- d. Anyone who has committed a crime will have a criminal record.
- e. Students who have been cheating will be punished severely.
- f. He's been studying law for three years.

2- How are the two present perfect verb tenses formed?

present perfect: *have / has* + past participle

present perfect continuous: *have / has been* + present participle

3- What is the difference in meaning between the underlined verbs in these pairs of sentences?

- a. Ali **has studied** law and history this year.
Hani **has been studying** law and history for four years.
- b. Omar **has written** two essays this morning.
Hassan **has been writing** an essay all morning.
- c. The police sergeant **has interviewed** two people so far today.
The detectives **have been interviewing** people all week.

In each case, the first sentence tells us about a recent activity that is finished but still related to the present, whereas the second sentence suggests a continuous activity that may not be finished.

P . 14

Reading**1. Read the *New crimes* text below and answer these questions.**

- a- What examples of old and new crimes does the writer give?

old crimes: theft / fraud; new crimes: identity theft

- b- What do you think motivates Internet criminals?

The ability to get things without paying.

- c- How do you think Internet criminals should be punished?

Suggested answer : They should be sent to prison and pay large fines.

New crimes

The law related to computer crime is changing very quickly. Modern criminals are using computers to help them commit crimes like identity theft and to make it easier to commit old crimes like theft or fraud. One issue that makes it hard to fight computer crime is that this type of offence is often more difficult to solve than traditional crimes because the criminals are invisible and their actions may be hard to prove. Another issue is that it is quite difficult to prosecute a computer criminal successfully because usually nothing is actually stolen or physically damaged.

In recent years computer crime has increased as the number of people using the Internet to buy things or to access their bank accounts has grown. This new type of business has attracted techno-criminals who order goods without paying, or break into the computer systems of businesses and move money to their own account or send viruses which can seriously damage computers and the information they contain. These viruses can affect millions of people worldwide.

Criminals can use the Internet to plan crimes and pass on confidential information more easily than meetings or telephone conversations. Computers allow criminals access to millions of people whom they may persuade to pay for something worthless.

جرائم جديدة

إن القانون المتعلق بجرائم الكمبيوتر يتبدل بسرعة كبيرة. يستخدم المجرمون المعاصرون الحواسيب لتساعدهم في ارتكاب جرائم مثل سرقة الهوية و لجعل ارتكاب الجرائم القديمة كالسرقة و التزوير أسهل. إحدى المسائل التي تجعل من الصعب محاربة جريمة الكمبيوتر هي أن هذا النوع من الاعتداءات غالباً ما يكون أكثر صعوبة في الحل من الجرائم التقليدية لأن المجرمين غير مرئيين و يمكن أن يكون من الصعب إثبات أفعالهم. مسألة أخرى هي أنه من الصعب جداً مقاضاة مجرم الكمبيوتر بنجاح لأنه عادةً لا يكون هناك شيء سرق أو تضرر مادياً.

في السنوات الأخيرة ازدادت جرائم الكمبيوتر لأن أعداد الناس الذين يستخدمون الانترنت لشراء الأشياء و الدخول إلى حساباتهم المصرفية قد ازداد. لقد جذب هذا النوع الجديد من الأعمال المجرمين التقنيين الذين يطلبون المنتجات (البضائع) بدون أن يدفعوا، أو يقتحموا أنظمة كمبيوتر الشركات و يحولوا المال إلى حسابهم الخاص أو يرسلوا الفيروسات التي يمكن أن تصيب الكمبيوترات أو المعلومات التي تحتويها بضرر بالغ. يمكن لهذه الفيروسات أن تؤثر بملايين الناس حول العالم.

يمكن أن يستخدم المجرمون الانترنت للتخطيط للجرائم وتسريب (تمرير) معلومات سرية بسهولة أكبر من الاجتماعات أو المحادثات الهاتفية. تسمح الحواسيب للمجرمين بالدخول إلى ملايين الناس و قد يقنعونهم بالدفع مقابل شيء لا قيمة له.

Ibrahim Chanam**2. Read the article again and match each beginning a-c with one of the endings 1-4. There is one more ending than you need.**

a Computer criminals are invisible ...	4 ... which makes it more difficult for the police to solve computer crimes.
b The fact that actual things are not stolen by computer criminals ...	1 ... makes it more difficult for the police to prosecute them successfully.
c One of the reasons why computer crime is on the increase is that ...	2 ... more people are using the Internet to buy goods.
	3 ... safer than telephone conversations.

3. Match these words and phrases from the article with their meanings.

a fraud	3 the crime of lying or cheating to get money
b identity theft	1 the crime of stealing someone's personal details
c virus	4 a bad program which damages computers
d solve a crime	2 to discover who commits a crime

Students' book - Page 15**Write a composition about (should motorists who drive too fast in residential areas be banned)**

In this article I intend to discuss an important issue which is driving fast in residential areas. First of all, the main point for speeding is sometimes drivers of ambulances and fire brigade cars need to drive fast in order to save people's lives. On the other hand, excessive speeding in residential areas can cause fatal accidents. In my opinion, people other than those emergency drivers must pay large fines or even be banned from driving.

في هذه المقالة أنوي أن أناقش مسألة هامة جداً و هي القيادة الخطرة في المناطق السكنية. قبل كل شيء النقطة الرئيسية لصالح القيادة السريعة هي أنه أحياناً سائقي سيارات الإسعاف و سيارات فوج الإطفاء يحتاجون أن يقودوا بسرعة لكي ينقذوا حياة الناس. و من ناحية أخرى فإن السرعة الزائدة في المناطق السكنية يمكن أن تسبب حوادث قاتلة. برأيي، الناس غير سائقي الطوارئ هؤلاء يجب أن يدفعوا غرامات كبيرة أو حتى يحرموا من القيادة.

Unit – 2 Migration

MODULE 1 World issues

P – 16 / 17

Match these words and phrases a-f with their meanings.

a success	3 a period of great wealth
b development	4 the process of modernisation
c deteriorate	6 to get worse
d emigrate	5 to leave your country to live in a new country
e famine	2 a serious shortage of food leading to great hunger on a large scale
f industry	1 economic activity concerned with raw materials

Why do people leave their home countries?

لماذا يترك الناس أوطانهم؟

This article looks at three reasons why people emigrate and gives historical examples

تبحث هذه المقالة في ثلاثة أسباب لم يهاجر الناس و تعطي أمثلة تاريخية.

A. Economic necessity

In the early 19th century, the most important economic activity in Ireland was agriculture. But the farmers were poor and **they** used old-fashioned methods. Because they heard that they could earn four times as much abroad, some farmers emigrated. But between 1820 and 1840, the economic situation in Ireland deteriorated and in 1845 the Potato Famine began. Disease destroyed 75% of the year's potatoes – the main food for most of the population. During the next two years, 350,000 people died of starvation and there was a huge increase in emigration. By the end of 1854, a quarter of the population of Ireland had left for other parts of the world.

A - الحاجة الاقتصادية

في وقت مبكر من القرن التاسع عشر ، كانت الزراعة هي النشاط الأهم في أيرلندا . و لكن الفلاحين كانوا فقراء و استخدموا طرقاً بدائية (قديمة) ، و لأنهم سمعوا أنه يمكن أن يكسبوا أربعة أضعاف في الخارج (مما يكسبوه) فقد هاجر بعض الفلاحين . و لكن بين عامي ١٨٢٠ و ١٨٤٠ تدهور الوضع الاقتصادي في أيرلندا ، و في عام ١٨٤٥ بدأت مجاعة البطاطا . لقد دمرت الأوبئة ٧٥% من موسم (محصول) البطاطا لذلك العام و هي الغذاء الرئيسي لمعظم السكان . و خلال العامين التاليين مات ٣٥٠ ألف شخص بسبب المجاعة و كان هناك زيادة ضخمة في الهجرة . و بنهاية عام ١٨٥٤ كان ربع سكان أيرلندا قد غادروا إلى أجزاء أخرى من العالم .

B. Natural disaster

Tristan da Cunha is a small island in the South Atlantic Ocean. In August 1961, earth tremors started and gradually became more frequent. At the beginning of October, the government decided that the island was no longer safe and the whole population of 268 people was evacuated to a nearby island. A ship picked **them** up and took them to South Africa. As they passed Tristan da Cunha, they saw the volcano erupt. Later the people were taken to England, where they stayed for the next two years. In 1963, the volcanic activity on the island stopped and most of the people voted to go back. However, not everyone returned: 14 people had adapted to life in England and decided to stay there, and five elderly people had died. There were other changes too: ten couples from the island had married, and eight babies had been born.

B – الكارثة الطبيعية

تريستان دا كوني هي جزيرة صغيرة في جنوب المحيط الأطلسي . في آب عام ١٩٦١ بدأت الهزات الأرضية و تدريجياً أصبحت متكررة أكثر . في بداية تشرين الأول قررت الحكومة أن الجزيرة لم تعد آمنة . و تم إجلاء جميع السكان البالغ عددهم ٢٦٨ شخصاً إلى جزيرة قريبة . أقلتهم سفينة إلى جنوب إفريقيا . و عندما مروا بمحاذاة تريستان دا كوني رأوا البركان يثور . لاحقاً تم أخذ هؤلاء الناس إلى انكلترا حيث أقاموا لمدة عامين متتاليين (لاحقين) . في عام ١٩٦٣ توقف النشاط البركاني على الجزيرة و صوت معظم الناس لصالح العودة . بأي حال لم يعد الجميع : فقد تكيف ١٤ شخصاً على الحياة في انكلترا و قرروا البقاء هناك ، و مات خمس أشخاص مسنين . و كان هناك تغيرات أخرى أيضاً : فقد تزوج عشر أشخاص (أزواج) من الجزيرة ، و ولد ثمانية أطفال .

C. Economic success

The economic success of the 1960s and 1970s saw the Arabian Gulf countries transformed into modern and wealthy states, funded by oil and other precious natural resources such as natural gas. The needs of the oil and construction industries led to a huge demand for skilled workers. Many thousands of people moved to the region to help build high-tech cities all over the Gulf. These workers, from many regions of the world, were able to find a better life and help with the development of the region.

C - النجاح الاقتصادي

إن النجاح الاقتصادي الذي شهدته بلدان الخليج العربي في ستينيات و سبعينيات القرن العشرين قد حولها إلى بلدان غنية عصرية يمولها النفط و المصادر الطبيعية القيمة الأخرى مثل الغاز الطبيعي . إن الحاجة للنفط و صناعة البناء أدت إلى طلب ضخم (متزايد) للعمال المهرة . لقد انتقل عدة آلاف من الناس إلى المنطقة للمساعدة في بناء مدن حديثة في كل أنحاء الخليج . كان هؤلاء العمال القادمين من مناطق عديدة في العالم قادرين على إيجاد حياة أفضل و ساعدوا في تطوير المنطقة .

P - 17

4 Read the article again and decide whether these statements are True or False.

- a- In the 19th century over half a million people died as a result of the potato famine. **F**
 b- The people of Tristan da Cunha were immediately taken from their island to England. **F**
 c- The people of Tristan da Cunha went home even though there was still volcanic activity. **F**
 d- The Arabian Gulf countries experienced an economic success requiring large numbers of workers. **T**

5 Find adjectives from the article that have the opposite meaning to words a-e.

a tiny	b modern	c late	d young	e rare
Huge	Old-fashioned	early	Elderly	Frequent

6 What do the words in bold in the text above refer to:

- a. they (line 3) **refers to farmers**
 b. them (line 21) **refers to 268 people**

P - 18

1 Write the numbers in these extracts from the article as words.

a- in the 19th century	Nineteenth
b- 75% of the year's potatoes	seventy-five
c- 350,000 people	three hundred and fifty thousand
d- by the end of 1854	eighteen fifty-four
e- in 1961	nineteen sixty-one
f- 268 people	two hundred and sixty-eight
g- 1960 and 1970	nineteen sixty and nineteen seventy

3 Answer these questions using numbers and words.

- a. What is twice six thousand? **twelve thousand**
 b. What is a quarter of twenty thousand? **five thousand**
 c. What is fifty percent of two thousand? **one thousand**
 d. What is five times nine? **forty-five**
 e. What is a third of twenty-one? **Seven**

Ibrahim Ghanam

5 Complete these sentences with words derived from the words in brackets.

- a- My weekly **earnings** are twice as much as they were last year. (earn)
- b- A huge earthquake caused the **destruction** of Agadir, Morocco, in 1960. (destroy)
- c- Two **disastrous** potato crops led to mass starvation in Ireland. (disaster)
- d- The **majority** of the world's migrants move to find a better life. (major)
- e- The people of Tristan da Cunha left because of volcanic **activity**. (act)
- f- The **economic** success of the 1960s and 1970s was funded by oil. (economy)
- g- These workers were able to find a better life and help with the **development** of the region. (develop)

P – 19 Grammar Talking about past events (Past Perfect)

2 Discuss the difference in meaning between these pairs of sentences.

A

1 In 1854 a quarter of the population of Ireland emigrated abroad.	The people emigrated during 1854
2 By 1854 a quarter of the population of Ireland had emigrated abroad.	The people emigrated before 1854.

B

1 Irish people emigrated because so many were dying of starvation.	People were dying while others emigrated.
2 Irish people emigrated because so many had died of starvation.	People died before the emigration.

C

1 When they sailed past Tristan da Cunha, the volcano erupted.	The volcano erupted at the same time as they sailed past
2 When they sailed past Tristan da Cunha, the volcano had erupted.	The volcano erupted before they sailed past.

3 Complete this short text with the correct form of the past simple or past perfect form of the verbs in brackets. (Sometimes both forms are possible.)

On February 29th 1960, an earthquake (1) **hit** (hit) the Moroccan city of Agadir. Although it (2) **lasted** (last) only fifteen seconds, it (3) **was** (be) one of the most destructive earthquakes of the 20th century. When the rescue team (4) **arrived** (arrive), many areas of the city (5) **had been destroyed** (be destroyed) completely and thousands of families (6) **had become** (become) refugees. After the earthquake, the city (7) **was evacuated** (be evacuate) and inhabitants (8) **moved** (move) 3km south where the city (9) **was rebuilt** (be rebuilt). Later studies (10) **showed** (show) that the disaster (11) **had killed** (kill) over one third of the population of Agadir, over 10,000 people, and (12) **had injured** (injure) many more.

في التاسع و العشرين من شهر شباط عام ١٩٦٠ ضرب زلزال مدينة أغاندير المغربية. على الرغم أنه دام فقط خمس عشرة ثانية إلا أنه كان واحداً من أكثر الزلازل تدميراً في القرن العشرين. عندما وصل فريق الإنقاذ ، العديد من مناطق المدينة كانت قد دمرت بشكل كامل و أصبحت آلاف العائلات مشردة (لاجئة) . بعد الزلزال تم إخلاء المدينة و انتقل السكان ٣ كم جنوباً حيث أعيد بناء المدينة. دراسات لاحقة أظهرت أن الكارثة كانت قد قتلت أكثر من ثلث سكان أغاندير، أكثر من عشرة آلاف إنسان، و أصابت العديد بعد.

4 Think of an explanation for these situations. Your explanation should include the words in brackets and a verb in the past perfect.

- a- James was very nervous when he arrived at the airport. (never fly before)
- **He'd never flown before.**
- b- Ruba didn't feel very confident about taking her driving test. (fail twice)
- **She had failed twice.**
- c- Salah didn't recognise his friend, Hani. (not see ten years)
- **She hadn't seen him for ten years.**
- d- Firass found it difficult to get up this morning. (work late the night before)
- **He'd worked late the night before.**
- e- When Laila read the letter she couldn't stop smiling. (pass exams)
- **She'd passed her exams.**
- f- Samer couldn't contact his brother, Khaled. (switch phone off)
- **He'd switched his phone off.**

Students' Book – P 21

Write an email to a friend about a significant event that changed your life

Dear Shadi

I'm writing to tell you about the incident that changed my life. Two years ago, my classmates and I went on a field trip to study insects. I was looking under a stone when a scorpion stung my hand. I remember it clearly when my friends rushed me to hospital. It was a terrible experience I'll never forget. That's why I have decided to study biology. I have become more careful about everything I do since then.

عزيزي شادي

أنا أكتب لأخبرك عن الحدث الذي غير حياتي . منذ سنتين ، أنا ورفاقي في الصف ذهبنا في رحلة حقلية لدراسة الحشرات . كنت أبحث تحت حجر عندما لسع عقرب يدي . شعرت بالألم حاد . أتذكر بوضوح عندما اندفع أصدقائي بي إلى المشفى . لقد كانت تجربة فظيعة لن أنساها أبداً . لهذا السبب قررت أن أدرس علم الأحياء . لقد أصبحت أكثر حذراً حول أي شيء أقوم به .

UNIT 3
Recycling resources

P – 23

6. Read the text below. Discuss these questions in pairs or groups.**Recycling in Syria**

Syria is at the forefront of regional recycling, hosting regional conferences dedicated to the protection of the environment, water conservation and climate change. Major recycling plants have been built in the last few years in order to dispose safely of substances such as plastics, batteries and other waste materials. There is a greatly increased awareness of the fragile local environment and the need to take care of Syria's precious natural resources.

إعادة التدوير في سوريا

تعتبر سوريا في طليعة بلدان المنطقة بإعادة التصنيع و تستضيف مؤتمرات إقليمية متخصصة في حماية البيئة، المحافظة على الماء و تغير المناخ. مصانع إعادة تدوير رئيسية بنيت في السنوات الأخيرة من أجل التخلص بأمان من مواد مثل البلاستيك، البطاريات و مواد نفايات أخرى. هناك وعي متزايد للبيئة المحلية الهشة و الحاجة للاعتناء بمصادر سوريا الطبيعية القيمة .

- Which materials can be recycled in Syria? **Glass, metal, paper, cardboard and plastic**

P – 24

VOCABULARY**Color idioms**

1- Replace the underlined phrases in these sentences with the correct form of one of the colour idioms in this list.

out of the blue - red tape - to be in black and white - to see red - to give the green light –
to put someone on the blacklist

- a. When he accused me of being wasteful, I got very angry. **saw red**.
- b. We have to stop companies from polluting the environment.
We should tell the public they have done something wrong. **put them on the blacklist**.
- c. They've said yes to the building of a new incinerator. **given the green light**.
- d. The rules clearly say that we must not leave rubbish outside our homes. Look, it's printed here. It's in black and white.
- e. It's almost impossible to get a passport quickly. There is so much paperwork and administration. **red tape**.
- f. I heard this morning, unexpectedly, that I'd won a writing competition. **out of the blue**.

Ibrahim Chanam**Three-part phrasal verbs**

3 Find the three-part phrasal verbs in these sentences, then match each verb with one of the meanings below.

a Things are moving so fast – it's impossible to keep up with the changes.	3 know the latest information about
b Supermarkets should cut down on packaging.	5 reduce
c We've come up against serious problems in our plan to recycle rubbish.	4 meet / face
d I'm looking forward to the day when 100% of our rubbish is recycled.	6 wait with pleasure for something to happen
e Scientists have just come up with a new way of reprocessing plastic.	2 invent / discover / find
f People living near the bus station put up with a lot of noise.	1 accept / stand / tolerate (something unpleasant)

P – 25 Talking about wishes

1- Read sentences a-e from the conversation, and answer these questions:

- In which sentences do the speakers express regret?
 - In which sentences do the speakers express criticism or annoyance?
- a.** I wish people would take the problem more seriously. **Criticism / annoyance**
- b.** I wish we could recycle plastic more easily. **regret**
- c.** I wish every country had a system like that. **regret**
- d.** I wish I were in charge of our company. **regret**
- e.** I wish they wouldn't do that. **Criticism / annoyance**

5- Write wish sentences which could follow these beginnings.

a- I'm really tired, but I can't sleep at night.	I wish I could sleep at night. I wish I weren't so tired
b- The weather's too hot at the moment.	I wish it was / were cooler.
c- People drive too fast in the city centre.	I wish they'd (= would) drive more slowly.
d- The streets are very dirty.	I wish they were cleaner.

P – 27**Students' Book- P 27**

Write a report based on waste and recycling statistics

The disposal of waste materials in landfill sites has become rarer . Last year Syria took a substantial stride in recycling of municipal waste . The recycling quantities of glass and metal waste increased by 15 % . And the recycling of plastic has risen by 40 % . Moreover , the contribution from the new metal recovery facility in Hama increased the amount of metal recycled from 1.2 million in 2013 tonnes to 1.8 million tonnes 2014.

إن التخلص من النفايات في المكبات أصبح أكثر ندرة . العام الماضي قطعت سوريا شوطاً كبيراً في إعادة تدوير النفايات المحلية . لقد زادت كمية نفايات الزجاج المعاد تدويرها بحوالي ١٥ % . و إعادة تدوير البلاستيك قد زادت بنسبة تصل إلى ٤٠ % . علاوة على ذلك ، فإن مساهمة منشأة (معمل) حماة لاستعادة المعادن قد زادت من كمية المعادن المعاد تدويرها من ١.٢ مليون طن عام ٢٠١٣ إلى ١.٨ مليون عام ٢٠١٤ .

REVIEW 1 , UNITS 1 – 3

P – 28

Grammar and Vocabulary

1- Choose the correct form, past simple or present perfect simple, of the verbs in this article.

Throughout history people (1) moved / **have moved** from one country to another. Some of these migrants (2) **chose** / have chosen to emigrate, while others (3) **had** / have had to move because of wars or natural disasters or for economic reasons. Here are some facts and figures.

▸ During the period 1970–2000, the number of migrants in the world (4) **rose** / has risen from 82 million to 175 million.

▸ In recent years migration into Europe and Russia (5) increased / **has increased** sharply, while in many other parts of the world numbers (6) fell / **have fallen**.

▸ In Australia, since 1945 over six million people (7) arrived / have arrived to settle.

In each ten-year period from 1950 to 2000, over a million migrants (8) **entered** / have entered the country.

عبر التاريخ (على مر الأزمنة) انتقل الناس من بلدٍ إلى آخر . لقد اختار بعض هؤلاء المهاجرين أن يهاجروا بينما توجب ذلك على آخرين بسبب الحروب أو الكوارث الطبيعية أو لأسباب اقتصادية فيما يلي بعض الحقائق و الأرقام .

- خلال الفترة بين عامي ١٩٧٠ - ٢٠٠٠ ارتفع عدد المهاجرين في العالم من ٨٢ مليون إلى ١٧٥ مليون إنسان .
- في السنوات الأخيرة ازدادت الهجرة إلى أوربا و روسيا بشكلٍ كبير جداً ، بينما انخفضت الأعداد في العديد من بقاع العالم الأخرى .
- في استراليا منذ عام ١٩٤٥ وصل أكثر من ٦ ملايين شخص ليستقروا هناك . و كل عشر سنوات منذ عام ١٩٥٠ إلى ٢٠٠٠ دخل أكثر من مليون مهاجر البلاد .

2 Copy and complete these conversations with the correct form, present perfect simple or present perfect continuous, of the verbs in brackets.

A

Yousef: Hi, Khaled, this is Yousef.

Khaled: Hi, Yousef.

Yousef: Where **have you been** (you be)? I **have been trying** (try) to phone you all morning.

Khaled: Sorry, I **have been sorting out** (sort out) my bedroom cupboards all morning.

B

Amina: Hello, Nada. I **haven't seen** (not see) you this week. What **have you been doing** (you do)?

Nada: Hi, Amina. I **have been helping** (help) my mother. We're having a family celebration at the weekend.

Amina: What **have you been doing** (you do) to help?

Nada: Lots of things. But mainly I **have been preparing** (prepare) the food and I **have been tidying** (tidy) the house.

C

Ali: You look very tired. What **have you been doing** (you do)?

Hani: I **have been playing** (play) football all morning.

Ali: You look really hot, too.

Hani: I am hot. I **haven't had** (not have) a cold drink since breakfast.

Copy and complete this story with the correct form of verbs from the lists that appear before each paragraph. Use the past simple, past continuous, present perfect or past perfect.

be call die spend fly away happen recycle turn wake up

Greenchester was a good place to live. It had parks, forests and lakes where people (1) **spent** their free time. It was a very clean place because everybody (2) **recycled** all their rubbish. But one morning the people of Greenchester (3) **woke up** to find that during the night their town (4) **had turned** grey. The sky, which (5) **had always been** (always) blue, was grey that morning. Most of the plants and trees (6) **had died / were dying** and the birds (7) **had flown away**. The people were angry, so they (8) **called** the Mayor. "Something (9) **has happened** to our town during the night. It's dying. We must do something."

كانت غرينشستر مكاناً جيداً للعيش . كان فيها حدائق ، غابات و بحيرات حيث أمضى الناس أوقات فراغهم . لقد كانت مكاناً نظيفاً جداً لأن الجميع أعادوا تدوير نفاياتهم . و لكن ذات صباح استيقظ سكان غرينشستر ليجدوا أن بلدتهم تحولت للون الرمادي خلال الليل . السماء التي لطالما (دائماً) كانت زرقاء أصبحت (كانت) رمادية في ذلك الصباح . معظم النباتات و الأشجار قد ماتت و الطيور طارت (حلقت) بعيداً . كان الناس غاضبين لذلك اتصلوا بالمحافظ " لقد حدث شيء ما لبلدتنا خلال الليل .إنها تموت . يجب أن نفعل شيئاً ما " .

be discuss expect go not know realise turn

The people (10) **expected** the Mayor to find the answer to their problem but he (11) **didn't know** why Greenchester (12) **had turned / was turning** grey. He (13) **discussed** the problem for several days with his advisors, then they suddenly (14) **realized** that the cause of the problem might be the landfill site on the edge of the town. Although it (15) **had been** there for as long as anyone could remember, very few members of the public ever (16) **went** there.

توقع الناس أن يجد المحافظ الجواب (الحل) لمشكلتهم و لكنه لم يعرف لماذا تحولت / كانت تتحول غرينشستر للون الرمادي . لقد ناقش المشكلة مع مستشاريه لعدة أيام ، ثم أدركوا فجأة أن سبب المشكلة قد (ربما) يكون موقع المكب (المطمر) عند طرف البلدة . و على الرغم أنه كان موجوداً منذ وقت أطول مما قد يتذكره أي شخص ، إلا أن عدداً قليلاً جداً من العامة سبق له أن ذهب إلى هناك .

bury find poison recycle visit

When the Mayor (17) **visited** the landfill site, he (18) **found** that it was full. The fumes from the unburied rubbish (19) **had poisoned / were poisoning** Greenchester. The people thought they (20) **had recycled / were recycling** their rubbish, but in fact, the council (21) **had buried** it in the landfill site. The people were furious and the Mayor had to resign.

عندما زار المحافظ موقع المكب وجد أنه كان ممتلئاً . بقدر سممت الأبخرة (الدخان) المتصاعدة من النفايات غير المطمورة (المدفونة) غرينشستر . لقد اعتقد الناس أنهم أعادوا تدوير (تصنيع) نفاياتهم ، ولكن في الواقع كان المجلس البلدي (المحلي) قد دفنها في موقع المكب . كان الناس غاضبين جداً و توجب على المحافظ أن يستقيل .

4 Write wish sentences in response to these statements.

a. Many people in my village smoke too much.	I wish people in my village would smoke less.
b. There are too many adverts on television.	I wish there weren't so many adverts on television.
c. Our city doesn't collect rubbish often enough.	I wish they would collect rubbish more often in our city.
d. I'm not good at maths.	I wish I were better at maths.
e. I can't read very quickly.	I wish I could read more quickly.

5 Complete these sentences with words derived from the words in brackets.

- a- Many people find out about the world by reading a **daily** (day) newspaper.
- b- During the storm, there were **chaotic** (chaos) scenes in the city.
- c- Omar felt very **guilty** (guilt) even though the accident was not his fault.
- d- The **majority** (major) of people never commit a crime.
- e- No rain has fallen in the region for two years. This has had a **disastrous** (disaster) effect on crops.
- f- And because there was no clean drinking water, **infections** (infect) spread very quickly through the population.

6 Choose the correct phrasal verbs in these sentences.

- a- In my city, the council is *going along with* / **running out of** space for new houses.
- b- Our town is trying hard to *come up against* / **cut down on** the amount of waste it buries in the ground.
- c- Students should read newspapers to make sure they **keep up with** / *look forward to* national and international news stories.
- d- I'm looking for a new flat. I can't *come up with* / **put up with** the noise of the traffic any longer.

Students' book - P 30**Write a set of recommendations to improve life in you town or city**

My town is very beautiful but some aspects of life could be improved. I recommend that we make efficient use of all open spaces. I suggest we plant good kinds of trees in parks and on platforms, which is pleasing and improves the air quality. It would be a good idea to provide common amenities. We can also use green public transport. I hope they take my ideas into consideration.

بلدتي جميلة جداً و لكن بعض مظاهر الحياة فيها يمكن تحسينها . أنا أنصح بأن نستخدم بكفاءة كل إنش مربع من مساحاتنا المفتوحة . أنا أقترح أن نقوم بزراعة أنواع جيدة من الأشجار في الحدائق و على الأرصفة و هذا ليس فقط سار (مبهج) ، و لكنه يحسن جودة الهواء . وستكون فكرةً جيدة إذا زدنا البلدة بمرافق عامة . نستطيع أيضاً أن نستخدم وسائل النقل الخضراء (النظيفة) . أمل بأن يأخذوا أفكارني بعين الاعتبار .

P – 31

Dear Sir / Madam,

There's a lot I enjoy about living in our city. The new out-of-town shopping areas have a good range of shops and are very convenient to drive to. And the new sports facilities in the same areas are excellent.

The city centre itself, however, is a different matter. Driving to work in the mornings often takes me over an hour because there's so much traffic. And the fumes from all the cars, buses and taxis are terrible. I've tried travelling by train, but that's not much better – it's overcrowded, too, and very uncomfortable. We need better public transport, but it would also help if people travelled to work at different times of the day.

I've been thinking of buying a flat in the city centre – it would make my life a lot easier, but they're all too expensive. I can't afford even the smallest flat. We urgently need more small flats for young office workers like me. The parks and other open spaces in the city have improved recently, but we need more of them. They're full for most of the day, and the situation is especially bad at lunch times. I suggest that all the residents of the city get together and agree on a new set of recommendations to improve life here.

My first recommendation would be this: "It would be a good idea if private motorists parked their cars outside the city, and then walked into the centre."

سيدي / سيدتي العزيزة

هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي استمتع بها في الحياة في مدينتنا . مناطق التسوق الجديدة خارج البلدة فيها سلسلة جديدة من المتاجر و من الملائم جداً (في المتناول - قريب - مريح) القيادة إليها . كما أن المنشآت (التسهيلات) الرياضية الجديدة في نفس المناطق ممتازة . مركز المدينة بحد ذاته مسألة مختلفة بأي حال، فالقيادة إلى العمل في الصباح غالباً ما تستغرقني أكثر من ساعة بسبب الازدحام الشديد . كما أن الدخان المنبعث من كل السيارات ، الحافلات و سيارات الأجرة فظيع .

لقد جربت السفر بالقطار و لكن ذلك ليس أفضل بكثير - إنه مزدحم جداً أيضاً و غير مريح أبداً (متعب). نحتاج إلى نقل عام أفضل، و لكن سيساعد أيضاً إذا سافر الناس للعمل في أوقات مختلفة من النهار.

- كنت أفكر بشراء شقة في وسط المدينة - سيجعل ذلك حياتي أسهل بكثير ، و لكن جميعها باهظة جداً . لا أستطيع أن أدفع ثمن حتى أصغر شقة . نحن نحتاج بشكل ملح (بشدة) لشقق أصغر للموظفين الشباب مثلي . لقد تحسنت الحدائق و المساحات المفتوحة الأخرى في المدينة مؤخراً و لكننا نحتاج للمزيد منها . فهي مكتظة معظم اليوم ، كما أن الوضع سيء خاصة في أوقات الغداء. أقترح أن يجتمع كل سكان المدينة و أن يقرروا مجموعة من التوصيات لتحسين الحياة هنا . أول توصية لي هي "ستكون فكرة جيدة إذا ركن أصحاب السيارات الخاصة سياراتهم خارج المدينة، و ساروا إلى مركز المدينة" .

UNIT 4
The Earth at risk

P – 34

- Match each word with its correct meaning.

a climate	4 weather conditions in an area over a period of time
b cultivate	8 to use land for growing crops
c dust	1 dry powder made of very small pieces of earth
d erode	3 to destroy slowly
e graze	7 to put animals in a field so that they can eat the grass
f soil	5 what plants need to grow in
g survive	2 to stay alive
h wildfire	6 fire that spreads very quickly

P – 35

The spread of the desert

Desertification, which is the process in which productive land changes into desert, is an increasingly serious problem in over a hundred countries of the world. One billion people, out of a total world population of six billion, suffer from **its** effects.

Desertification usually occurs in dry areas where there is no rain and where the climate is harsh. In these places, the top layer of soil is destroyed so that the land can no longer be used for growing crops or grazing animals. This means that people who depend on the land for food have to move to 'greener' areas in order to survive. A proportion of the population may survive by moving, but others may die because of shortages of food and water.

Although natural changes in the climate often start the process, the activities of human beings are often the real cause of desertification. Because there are growing numbers of people to feed, farmers tend to overcultivate their land, with the result that the soil becomes poor and unproductive. Other farmers overgraze their land and this permanently kills off grass and other plants. In addition to the effects of farming, deforestation – the cutting down of trees – also erodes the soil. Trees are usually cut down to make more agricultural land, but once there are no longer trees and plants on an area of land, there is nothing to stop the wind and rain from blowing or washing away the top layer of soil. The dust which this produces can travel long distances and affect the health of people living in cities thousands of kilometres away.

But this is not the end of the story: desertification can create conditions which produce strong winds and dangerous wildfires and this leads to even greater pressure on the Earth's most precious resource, water.

انتشار الصحراء

إن التصحر ، و هو عملية تحول الأرض المنتجة إلى صحراء ، هو مشكلة خطيرة بشكل متزايد في أكثر من مئة بلد حول العالم . يعاني مليار إنسان من بين إجمالي عدد سكان العالم البالغ ستة مليارات إنسان من آثاره .

يحصل التصحر عادةً في المناطق الجافة حيث لا يوجد مطر و حيث يكون المناخ قاسياً . في هذه الأماكن تكون الطبقة العليا من التربة مدمرة لذلك لا يعد بالإمكان استخدام الأرض لزراعة المحاصيل أو لرعي الحيوانات . ذلك يعني أن الناس الذين يعتمدون على الأرض من أجل الطعام عليهم أن ينتقلوا إلى مناطق أكثر اخضراراً لكي ينجو . قد ينجو جزء من السكان بالانتقال ، و لكن قد يموت آخريين بسبب نقص الطعام أو الماء .

و على الرغم أن التبدلات (التغيرات) الطبيعية في المناخ هي من يبدأ العملية إلا أن نشاطات البشر هي غالباً ما تكون السبب الحقيقي للتصحر . و لأنه يوجد أعداد متزايدة من البشر ليتم إطعامهم ، فإن المزارعون يميلون للإفراط في حراثة أراضيهم ، و تكون النتيجة أن الأرض (التربة) تصبح فقيرة و غير منتجة . و هناك مزارعين آخريين يتسببون بالرعي الجائر لأرضهم و ذلك يقلل الأعشاب و النباتات الأخرى بشكل نهائي (دائم) و بالإضافة لأثر (نتائج) الزراعة ، فإن قطع الأشجار يعرّي (يحت) التربة . تقطع الأشجار عادةً لتشكيل المزيد من الأراضي الزراعية ولكن ما إن (إن لم) يعد هناك أشجار و نباتات في منطقة ما من الأرض لا شيء يمنع الرياح و الأمطار من الهبوب و جرف (غسل) الطبقة العليا من التربة . و يمكن للغبار الذي ينتجه ذلك أن يطير (يسافر) لمسافات بعيدة و يؤثر على صحة الناس الذين يعيشون في المدن على بعد آلاف الكيلومترات . ولكن هذا ليس نهاية القصة : يمكن للتصحر أن يخلق ظروفاً تنتج رياحاً قوية و حرائق خطيرة و ذلك يقود إلى ضغط أكبر على أهم مصادر الأرض القيمة و هو الماء .

4 Match each sentence beginning a-d with the correct ending 1-4.

Beginnings	Endings
a A sixth of the world's population	2 is affected by the problem of desertification.
b Severe climatic conditions	1 can destroy the top layer of soil.
c If the top layer of soil is destroyed	4 the land cannot be used for farming.
d People who cannot escape from desert areas	3 are in danger of dying from starvation.

P – 36

1. Complete this text with appropriate words from the list below.

average - cloudy - cold - crops - dry – hot - lightning - rain - stormy - sunny - weather

How is climate different from weather?

Weather is what happens to the air and the atmosphere outside. It may be cold or (1) **hot**, wet or (2) **dry**. It can be calm or (3) **stormy**, clear or (4) **cloudy**. The atmosphere changes depending on whether it's rainy or (5) **sunny**. Thunder and (6) **lightning** are also part of weather. Climate, on the other hand, is the (7) **average** weather in a particular place over a long period of time. A place where it doesn't (8) **rain** over many years has a dry climate. A place with low temperatures for most of the year has a (9) **cold** climate. Here in Syria we celebrate wet weather because we need the rain. Information about climate is useful for (10) **weather** forecasting. It also helps farmers to know when it is the best time to plant their (11) **crops**.

كيف يختلف المناخ عن الطقس؟

الطقس هو ما يحدث للهواء و الغلاف الجوي في الخارج . قد يكون بارداً أو حاراً ، رطباً أو جافاً . قد يكون هادئاً أو عاصفاً ، صاحياً أو غائماً . يتغير الجو استناداً إلى الطقس . يكون مائلاً أو مشمساً . الرعد و البرق هما جزء من الطقس . المناخ من جهة أخرى هو معدل الطقس في مكان محدد على المدى الطويل (لمدة طويلة من الزمن) . المكان الذي لا تمطر فيه لعدة سنوات له مناخ جاف . و المكان ذو درجات حرارة منخفضة لمعظم العام له مناخ بارد . هنا في سورية نبتهج (نحتفل) بالطقس الرطب لأننا نحتاج المطر . المعلومات عن المناخ مفيدة للتنبؤ الجوي ، كما تساعد المزارعين في معرفة الوقت الأفضل لزراعة محاصيلهم .

Match the two prefixes a-b below with these meanings:

a re-	Again
1 I spilt tea on my homework, so I had to <i>rewrite</i> it.	لقد سكبت الشاي على وظيفتي ، لذلك توجب علي أن أعيد كتابتها.
2 During the storm, three houses were destroyed and had to be <i>rebuilt</i> .	خلال العاصفة ، دُمّرت ثلاثة منازل و توجب إعادة بناءها.
b mis-	wrongly or badly
1 I <i>misheard</i> you. I thought you said we'd meet at 9 o'clock.	لقد أخطأت في سماعك . ظننت أنك قلت بأننا سنلتقي في التاسعة .
2 The children were very good. None of them <i>misbehaved</i> in any way.	كان الأولاد جيدين جداً . لم يسئ أياً منهم التصرف بأي شكل كان.

Grammar

Explanations and results

1. Which words or phrases in these sentences from the article on page 35 introduce explanations?

- a. Some people move to greener areas **in order to** survive.
- b. **Because** there are growing numbers of people to feed, farmers tend to overcultivate their land.
- c. Trees are usually cut down **to make** more agricultural land.

2. For the three sentences above write questions with *Why*.

- a. Why do some people move to greener areas?
- b. Why do farmers tend to overcultivate their land?
- c. Why are trees usually cut down?

3. Answer these questions with your own ideas, using explanation words or phrases.

- a- Why do some farmers overcultivate or overgraze their land? **Because they want to produce more food crops.**
- b- Why do some countries need more agricultural land? **In order to provide food for the growing populations.**
- c- Why is the problem of desertification getting worse? **Because millions of people depend on agriculture and this can affect the security of food for the humans.**
- d- Why do some people die in desert areas? **Some people die in desert areas because of the lack of water and dehydration.**

4. Which words or phrases in these sentences from the article on page 35 link an action with a result?

- a- ... the top layer of soil is destroyed **so that** the land can no longer be used for growing crops.
- b- ... the activities of human beings **are** often **the real cause of** desertification.
- c- ... farmers tend to overcultivate their land, **with the result that** the soil becomes poor and unproductive.
- d- ... **this leads to** even greater pressure on the Earth's most precious resource, water.

5. Complete these sentences with your own ideas.

- a- More and more forests are being cut down, with the result that **the land is converted to farms. (ranches).**
- b- Dust from Africa which reaches large modern cities is the cause of **some asthmatics and respiratory problems.**
- c- Forests are cut down so that **people can get more pulp for making paper. (people can extract minerals and energy).**
- d- Some areas of land are being reclaimed from deserts. This can lead to **more agricultural lands.**

Dear ...

One of the most important issues in the 21st century is the scarcity of fresh water. A lack of water presents major hurdles to human development. Aside from fulfilling our need to drink, fresh water also plays a central role in agricultural production.

Water preservation is a major global challenge. Greater development and a perpetually increasing population has led to unprecedented demands on all of our resources, which has in turn led to an increased water shortage. This has prompted Syria to support new water conservation programmes, which improve the efficiency of irrigation systems in rural areas.

This includes empowering local cooperatives in the implementation of their knowledge to help improve lives through the conservation of water.

Ultimately, we need to curtail the unwarranted consumption of water if we are to prevail over the challenges facing Syria today. Do you have any suggestions about how average Syrians can contribute to cutting back on water? Please let me know your ideas.

Many thanks

Dr Abdulhameed

عزيزي.....

إحدى أهم القضايا في القرن الحادي والعشرين هي ندرة المياه العذبة. يشكل نقص الماء عقبات (تحديات) رئيسية (كبرى) أمام التطور البشري. بعيداً عن إرواء أنفسنا بالشرب فإن الماء يلعب دوراً رئيسياً في الإنتاج الزراعي. إن الحفاظ على الماء هو تحدي عالمي رئيسي. لقد قاد التطور (النمو) الكبير و تزايد عدد السكان بشكلٍ دائم إلى طلب غير مسبوق على كل مصادرنا، و الذي قاد بدوره إلى نقص متزايد في الماء. لقد حثّ (حفز) هذا سوريا على دعم البرامج الجديدة للحفاظ على الماء و التي تحسن كفاءة الري في المناطق الريفية. و هذا يتضمن تعزيز دور الجمعيات التعاونية (المؤسسات) المحلية في تطبيق معرفتهم للمساعدة في تحسين الحياة من خلال المحافظة على الماء.

في النهاية (جوهرياً) نحتاج أن نقلص الاستهلاك غير المبرر (الزائد-المفرط) للماء إذا أردنا أن ننتصر على التحديات التي تواجه سوريا اليوم. هل عندك أية اقتراحات تمكن الناس العاديين في سوريا من المساهمة في تخفيض استهلاك الماء؟ الرجاء أعلمني بأفكارك.

و تفضلوا بقبول الشكر الجزيل

الدكتور عبد الحميد

Students' book p 39

Write a reply to an email on water shortage, suggesting ways of consuming less .

Water scarcity is the lack of sufficient available water resources to meet the demands of water usage within a region. Water may be overused on people, animals, land or even for recreational activities. I recommend that we conserve water by improving substandard irrigation systems, installing low-flow shower heads which uses less water and fixing drips. I think that if we work hard, we will be able to make a difference.

إن ندرة المياه هي نقص مصادر المياه المتوفرة الكافية لتغطية احتياجات استخدام الماء لمنطقة ما. الماء قد يستخدم بإفراط على الناس، الحيوانات، الأراضي أو حتى لأجل نشاطات الاستجمام. أنا أوصي بأن نحافظ على الماء و ذلك عبر تحسين أنظمة الري متدنية المستوى، تركيب رأس دوش ذو تدفق منخفض و الذي يستخدم مياهاً أقل و أن نصلح التسريبات. إذا عملنا بجد، سنكون قادرين على إحداث فرق (اختلاف).

UNIT 5
A world of plants

P – 40

1- Read the article on the Eden Project below:**A whole planet under glass**

The Eden Project, which opened in the year 2000, is a living plant museum in the countryside in the south-west of England. It is a very popular attraction and millions of visitors come every year to see plants from all over the world growing in this special environment.

Some plants grow outside, but many are in specially-built domes, called 'biomes', where the temperature and humidity are carefully controlled. The biomes are like giant greenhouses and one, the Humid Tropics biome, is the largest greenhouse in the world. It is over 55m high and 200m long and contains many thousands of exotic plants not found in England.

One of the purposes of the project is to show how dependent human beings are on plants and to educate people on the importance of preserving our natural environment. Aside from the plant life, the Eden Project has fascinating interactive exhibits for people of all ages. Many of the visitors are groups of school children and the Eden Project combines educational value with scientific interest and a huge variety of spectacular plant life.

كوكب كامل تحت الزجاج

مشروع عدن و الذي افتتح عام ٢٠٠٠ هو متحف نباتي حي في الريف في جنوب غرب انكلترا . إنه معلم سياحي مشهور يأتي إليه ملايين الزوار كل عام لرؤية النباتات من كل أنحاء العالم تنمو في هذه البيئة الخاصة . تنمو بعض النباتات في الخارج و لكن العديد منها في قبب مصممة خصيصاً تسمى biome بالمجمع الإحيائي [تجمع من النباتات و الحيوانات في بيئة معينة] حيث تكون الحرارة و الرطوبة تحت السيطرة (مسيطر عليها) بعناية. تشبه القباب البيوت البلاستيكية العملاقة و لكن إحداها و هي القبة الاستوائية الرطبة هي أضخم بيت بلاستيكي في العالم . و يبلغ ارتفاعها أكثر من ٥٥ متراً و طولها ٢٠٠ متر و تحوي عدة آلاف من النباتات الغريبة الغير موجودة في انكلترا . إحدى أهداف هذا المشروع هي إظهار كم أن البشر معتمدين على النباتات و لتثقيف الناس حول أهمية الحفاظ على البيئة الطبيعية . بمعزل عن (بعيداً عن) الحياة النباتية ، فإن مشروع عدن فيه (يمتلك) معارض تفاعلية ساحرة للناس من كل الأعمار . العديد من الزوار هم مجموعات من أطفال المدارس و يضم مشروع عدن قيمة ثقافية و فائدة علمية و تنوع هائل من الحياة النباتية الأخاذة (الساحرة) .

a- What is special about the Eden Project?	a It is a museum of living plants (unusual)
b- How do you evaluate the purpose of the project?	b Students' own answers
c- Who visits the Eden Project? Why?	c People visit from all over the world; Students' own answers
d- Would you like to visit the Eden Project? Why?	d Students' own answers
e- What attracts your attention in these two pictures?	e (suggested answers) the big blue domes; the people inside them; the exotic-looking plants.
f- What does the word <i>It</i> (line 8) in bold in the text above refer to?	f 'It' refers to the Humid Tropics Biome.
g- What educational uses could the Eden Project serve?	g (suggested answers) educate the public about the importance of preserving the natural environment; for people to learn about a wide variety of plant species.

3- Match the words below with their meanings.

a environmentalist	3 someone who tries to protect the environment
b exotic	5 unusual, foreign
c protect	2 to stop harm or damage
d temperate	1 not too hot or too cold
e waterfall	4 a flow of water from a river or stream falling from a height

P – 42 Vocabulary

1. Match these words for things that grow with the illustrations.

a fig	b rice	c corn	d banana	e peanuts
f potato	g pineapple	h carrot	i aubergine	j tomato

2. Where do these things grow: on a tree, on a plant or bush, on the ground or under the ground?

- tree: fig, pineapple, banana
- plant / bush: aubergine, tomato, corn
- on the ground: rice
- under the ground: peanuts, potatoes, carrots

Adjectives + prepositions

3. Complete these sentences with the correct prepositions from the list. You will need to use some prepositions more than once.

for	from	in	of	on	with
-----	------	----	----	----	------

- a- Human beings are dependent **on** plants.
- b- While she was at the Eden Project one girl became very interested **in** biology.
- c- I've never been keen **on** museums.
- d- The Eden Project is quite different **from** a normal museum.
- e- On wet days the biomes are full **of** visitors sheltering from the rain.
- f- Visiting the Eden Project makes you aware **of** the importance of plants.
- g- The Eden Project is particularly famous **for** its huge biomes.
- h- It's expensive to get into the Eden Project, but we were very satisfied **with** our visit.

P – 43 Grammar

Explaining Possibilities

1- What are the differences in meaning between these pairs of sentences? Match the sentences in each pair with one of the meanings given.

a-

لا يمكن أن يكون مكاناً ممتعاً للعمل .	It can't be an interesting place to work.	2 You feel sure it isn't.
لا بدّ أنه مكان ممتع للعمل فيه (لكي تعمل فيه)	It must be an interesting place to work.	1 You feel sure it is.

b-

ربما أتلفتها الحشود لي	The crowds might have spoiled it for me.	2 You think it was possible in the past.
قد (ربما) تتلفها الحشود لي	The crowds might spoil it for me.	1 You think it is possible in the future.

c-

ربما أتى بعض الناس من إفريقيا	Some people might have come from Africa.	1 You think it was possible.
لا بد أن بعض الناس قد أتوا من إفريقيا	Some people must have come from Africa.	2 You feel sure it was possible.

a. Why do people visit the places you see in the photographs? What can they see and do there?

For tourism; to look at and learn about these world-famous sites

b. Which of the places in the photos would you most like to visit? Why? **Students' own answers**

c. What was the last place you visited? Did you enjoy your visit? What did you learn from your visit?

Students' own answers

1- **Make a list of the positive and negative points.**

Positive	Negative
impressive Roman ruins; clear sky; view of sunset	lack of time; very hot

Our Visit to Apamea

Ahmad and I have just got home from a two-day visit to Apamea. It was only a short visit but I will remember it forever. Apamea is an ancient site on the bank of the Orontes River. There are extensive ruins which tourists can walk around and where they can learn about many different civilisations.

We arrived on Tuesday evening and the first thing we did was set up our camp. The sky was very clear and we could see millions of stars. The next morning was very hot but we visited the Roman city. There were enormous columns and high walls which I thought were amazing.

The next day was another scorching hot day and we climbed up the hill to the medieval citadel. I didn't think the ruins were as interesting, but the views from the top were incredible and we could see a long way across Syria. As the sun went down over the plain, we saw the buildings change colour, from a dark red to pink and purple. It was an amazing sight I will never forget.

زيارتنا لآفاميا

لقد عدت لتو أنا و أحمد من زيارة دامت يومين لآفاميا . لقد كانت زيارة قصيرة و لكني سأذكرها للأبد . إن آفاميا موقع (أثري) قديم على ضفة نهر العاصي . و هناك آثار ممتدة (شاسعة) حيث يستطيع السياح أن يتجولوا في الأرجاء و يتعلموا عن العديد من الحضارات المختلفة .

وصلنا مساء يوم الثلاثاء و أول شيء عملناه هو نصب المخيم . كانت السماء صافية جداً و كان بإمكاننا أن نرى ملايين النجوم . كان الصباح التالي حاراً جداً و لكننا زرنا المدينة الرومانية . كان هناك أعمدة هائلة و جدران عالية كانت مذهلة برأيي (على ما أعتقد) . و كان اليوم التالي شديد الحرارة (حارقاً) و تسلقنا التلة إلى قلعة القرون الوسطى . لم أظن أن الآثار هنا كانت ممتعة (جميلة) كسابقتها ، و لكن المناظر من الأعلى كانت لا تصدق و تمكنا من رؤية مسافة بعيدة عبر سوريا و عندما بدأت الشمس تغيب (تهبط) فوق السهل ، رأينا الأبنية يتغير لونها من الأحمر الغامق إلى الوردى ثم الأرجواني . لقد كان منظرًا مذهلاً لن أنساه أبداً .

Read the account again and make two lists:

Facts	Opinions
Apamea is an ancient site on the bank of the Orontes River. Extensive ancient ruins; enormous columns; very hot weather; views across Syria	I didn't think the ruins were as interesting. thought were amazing; not as interesting; incredible views from the top; an amazing sight.

Write an account of a visit you made

Last month, we visited my friend in Umm al-Touyour. We arrived at 10 am. The first thing we did was going on a terrific excursion. Then, we had lunch in a seafood restaurant. That same day we met a nice couple from Canada. It was a good opportunity to practice our English. The next day we went snorkeling. What surprised me was the amazing colorful fish and coral underwater. It was a wonderful visit I will never forget.

الشهر الماضي ، زرت صديقي في أم الطيور . وصلنا في الساعة العاشرة صباحاً . اول شيء قمنا به هو الذهاب في رحلة بحرية مذهلة . ثم تناولنا الغداء في مطعم مأكولات بحرية . في نفس ذلك اليوم التقينا بزوجين لطيفين من كندا . لقد كانت فرصة جيدة لنمارس انكليزيتنا . في اليوم التالي ذهبنا للغوص باستخدام القصبية . ما أدهشني كان الأسماك الملونة و المرجان تحت الماء . لقد كانت زيارة رائعة لن أنساها أبداً .

UNIT 6
Under threat

P - 46

Guess and answer as many of these quiz questions as you can.

Sand gazelle quiz

a Which region does the sand gazelle live in?

A South America	C Europe
B North America	D Arabian Gulf and North Africa

b What is the sand gazelle's natural habitat?

A Desert	C Forests
B Mountains	D Zoo

c What is the top speed of a sand gazelle?

A 50 km per hour	C 95 km per hour
B 80 km per hour	D 120 km per hour

d What is the natural diet of a sand gazelle?

A Desert plants	C Fish
B Ants	D Small mammals

e How much does a sand gazelle weigh?

A Up to 15 kg	C Up to 10 kg
B Up to 20 kg	D Up to 25 kg

f What are the two main threats to the gazelle?

A Predation by larger mammals and disease	C Loss of habitat and hunting
B Loss of habitat and disease	D Hunting and predation by larger mammals

Read

Match these words with their meanings.

يتجمع	a congregate	3 come together, often in a large group
انقراض	b extinction	1 the death of a type of animal
يتجنب	c evade	5 escape or avoid
مفترس	d predator	4 an animal that kills and eats other animals
ضحل	e shallow	2 without depth

The Sand Gazelle

- A. (**LOCATION**) The sand gazelle, or goitered gazelle, is a horned animal that lives across the Arabian Gulf and North Africa. Originally found in all Arab countries, it is now extinct in Iraq, Kuwait and Yemen and endangered everywhere else, including Syria.
- B. (**TYPICAL LIFESTYLE**) In the summer months, sand gazelles live in small family groups of around ten individuals. During the winter, they congregate in larger herds. They are ideally suited to the desert environment with their white heads and sand-coloured bodies. This allows them to blend into the desert, camouflaging them from predators.
- C. (**SPECIAL ABILITIES**) Sand gazelles are small mammals, weighing only 20 kg. However, they are very quick and have been known to reach speeds of almost 100 km per hour. They are excellent jumpers and use their speed and agility to evade the attention of predators.
- D. (**DIET**) Sand gazelles eat around 6 kg of plants per day – consuming the shoots, roots, leaves and stems of desert plants – around a third of their overall bodyweight. They drink 3 litres of water per day and in the hottest season dig shallow pits and lie on the cooler soil.
- E. (**SAVING THE SAND GAZELLE**) The sand gazelle is in danger of extinction, mainly due to habitat loss and hunting. However, there have been some efforts to save them, and some countries have begun breeding them for release into the wild. There have been some successes, but the battle to save them and other native species continues. In Syria, there is an increasing awareness about the importance of saving wild animals.

غزال (ظبي) الرمل

- A. (**الموقع**) إن غزال الرمل أو الغزال ذو الغدة هو حيوان ذو قرون يعيش في أرجاء الخليج العربي و شمال إفريقيا . يوجد بشكل أصلي (أساسي) في كل البلاد العربية ، و هو الآن منقرض في العراق ، الكويت و اليمن و هو مهدد بالانقراض في كل مكان آخر بما فيها سوريا .
- B. (**نمط الحياة النموذجي**) في أشهر الصيف يعيش غزال الرمل في مجموعات عائلية صغيرة من حوالي عشر أفراد. تتجمع خلال الشتاء في قطعان أكبر . إنها تتكيف (تناسب) بشكل مثالي مع بيئة الصحراء برؤوسها البيضاء و أجسادها ذات اللون الرملي . ذلك يسمح لها بالتماهي (الامتزاج) مع الصحراء موهمة إياها لخداع المفترسات .
- C. (**مقدرات خاصة**) إن غزالان الرمل هي ثدييات صغيرة تزن فقط عشرين كيلوغراماً . و (بأي حال) مع ذلك هي سريعة جداً و معروف عنها وصولها لسرعة تصل إلى ١٠٠ كم/سا تقريباً . إنها وثابة ممتازة . و تستخدم سرعتها و رشاقته لتتملص (تتفادى) من اهتمام (انتباه) المفترسات .
- D. (**الحمية- الغذاء**) تأكل غزالان الرمل حوالي ٦ كيلوغرامات من النباتات في اليوم - (مستهلكة) و هي تستهلك براعم ، جذور و أوراق و سيقان النباتات الصحراوية - و هذا يبلغ ثلث وزن جسمها الإجمالي تقريباً . و هي تشرب ٣ لترات من الماء في اليوم . و في المواسم (الفصول) الأكثر حرارة تحفر حفراً ضحلة و تستلقي على التربة الأبرد .
- E. (**إنقاذ غزال الرمل**) إن غزال الرمل مهدد بالانقراض و ذلك بسبب نقص الموطن و الصيد بشكل رئيسي . و بأي حال ، كان هناك بعض الجهود لإنقاذها ، و بدأت بعض البلدان باستيلائها لإطلاقها في البرية . لقد كان هناك بعض النجاحات ، و لكن المعركة لإنقاذها هي و فصائل محلية أخرى تستمر (مستمرة) . في سوريا هناك و عي متزايد لأهمية إنقاذ الحيوانات البرية .

Check your understanding 4- Discuss the following questions

a- How do sand gazelles change their habits in different seasons?	a. In summer they live in small family groups and in winter they congregate in larger herds.
b- How does the body of a sand gazelle protect it from harm in the desert?	b. Sand gazelles can escape predators because they are small and light; they can run very fast and are agile, being excellent jumpers. Their white heads and sand-coloured bodies can camouflage them from predators.
c- Is anything being done to save the gazelles? Explain.	c. In countries across the Middle East, sand gazelles are being bred for release into the wild.
d- What do the words <i>they</i> (line 5) and <i>their</i> (line 9) in bold in the text above refer to?	d. 'They' refers to sand gazelles. 'Their' refers to sand gazelles.

6- Complete these sentences with information from the article.

- The coloring of the sand gazelle makes it ideally suited to ... **the desert environment.**
- The sand gazelle digs shallow pits in the ground and ... **lies on the cooler soil.**
- The sand gazelle lives in larger groups during ... **the winter.**
- Sand gazelles are in danger due to ... **habitat loss and hunting.**

P – 48

Vocabulary - Animals**1- Match the correct definition a-c below with each of the three animal types in this diagram.**

- They have warm blood and fur or hair. They feed their young with milk. **Mammals**
- They have dry skin and cold blood. Most of them lay eggs with soft shells. **Reptiles**
- They have warm blood and feathers. Most of them can fly. **Birds**

2- Add the names of these animals to the correct part of your diagram.

- **Birds:** eagle, owl, parrot, vulture
- **Mammals:** bat, camel, mouse, rabbit
- **Reptiles:** lizard, snake, turtle

P – 49 Grammar

1- Note the passive verbs in these sentences.

- Sand gazelles **are protected** from predators by camouflage. **present simple**
- They are excellent jumpers and their speed and agility **are used** to evade the attention of predators. **Present simple**
- If sand gazelles **are being threatened**, they can run away. **Present continuous**
- In recent decades, efforts **have been made** to save endangered species in Syria. **present perfect**

3- Discuss these questions with a partner.

- In which two sentences **1a-d** do we know who or what performs the actions?
 - **sentences a and b**
- Who or what do you think performs the actions in the other two sentences?
 - **c: enemies / predators; d: the authorities / government / environmental organisations**
- Why do you think the writer does not mention who or what performs the actions in those two sentences?
 - **They are not as important as the actions themselves / They are obvious.**

4 Rewrite sentences 1a-d using active verbs. You will have to think of a subject for some of the active verbs.

- Sand gazelles are excellent jumpers, and they **use** their speed and agility to evade the attention of predators.
- If enemies **are threatening** sand gazelles, they can run away.
- Camouflage **protects** sand gazelles from predators.
- In recent decades, environmental organisations **have made** efforts to save endangered species in Syria.

Write a report to the council making recommendations about where to build houses

Finding vacant spaces will be the most challenging aspect of building in my town. In fact, there are two reasons why I think we should utilize the northern part of our town for construction purposes. The first one is that it will make our town modernize and expand towards the city. secondly, this site is near the highway, so there will be no extra cost making ways to the area. I hope our officials will take this into consideration .

إن إيجاد مساحات شاغرة سيكون مظهر التحدي الأكبر بالنسبة للبناء في بلدتي . في الواقع ، هناك سببين لماذا يجب أن نستخدم الجزء الشمالي من بلدتنا لأغراض البناء . الأول هو أنه سيجعل بلدتنا تصبح أكثر حداثة و تتوسع باتجاه المدينة . ثانياً ، هذا الموقع قريب من الطريق العام ، لذلك لن يكون هناك تكاليف إضافية في شق طرق إلى المنطقة . أمل أن يأخذ مسؤولونا هذا بعين الاعتبار .

Writing**A report****Organisation of small businesses and the council housing project****1. Purpose of report**

The purpose of this report is to comment on the projected housing development for the local area, with respect to the business community in particular.

2. Why build on the wetland?

We recognise the needs of the burgeoning population and so, by consensus, are convinced of the need

to utilise undeveloped wetlands for construction purposes.

As a result:

- building here will increase demand for services, which the members of our organisation provide.
- any windfall from them will have a knock-on effect on the town and will help to improve the local economy.

3. Why not build elsewhere?

Equally, we are concerned that building the new houses out of town may represent a missed opportunity for this town to expand and modernise. Out-of-town housing will:

- require new shops and so increase competition for local businesses.
- direct investment away from our town at a time of economic recession.

4. Conclusion

This group vociferously supports the building of new houses on local wetlands. Whilst we are aware of environmental concerns, the town's economic vitality must precede environmental issues.

جمعية (منظمة) الشركات الصغيرة و مشروع إسكان المجلس (البلدي)**١ . الغاية من التقرير**

الغاية من هذا التقرير هو التعليق على (تسليط الضوء) مشروع تطوير الإسكان للمنطقة المحلية فيما يتعلق بعالم الأعمال على وجه التحديد (الخصوص) .

٢ . لماذا البناء في منطقة الأرض الرطبة (المستنقعات) ؟

نحن ندرك احتياجات النمو السكاني و لذلك نحن بالإجماع مقتنعين بحاجة الاستفادة من (استخدام) الأراضي الرطبة النامية (غير المتطورة) لأغراض البناء و كنتيجة لذلك :

- سيزيد البناء هنا الطلب (الحاجة) على الخدمات التي يقدمها أعضاء جمعيتنا .
- إن أية مكاسب مفاجئة منه (المشروع) سيكون لها تأثير تسلسلي (تباعاً) على البلدة و سيساعد في تطوير (تحسين) الاقتصاد المحلي .

٣ . لماذا لا يكون البناء في مكان آخر ؟

بصورة متساوية (على حد سواء) نحن مهتمين أن بناء المنازل الجديدة خارج البلدة قد يمثل فرصة (ضائعة- لا تفوت) فائتة لهذه البلدة كي تتوسع و تتحدث . إن البناء(مشروع الإسكان) خارج البلدة سوف :

- يتطلب متاجر جديدة و بالتالي يزيد المنافسة بين الشركات المحلية .
- يوجه الاستثمار بعيداً عن بلدتنا في فترة ركود اقتصادي .

٤ . الخاتمة :

تؤيد هذه المجموعة بشكل صاخب (بالصوت العالي و على الملأ) بناء المنازل الجديدة على الأراضي الرطبة المحلية . و بينما نحن مدركين للشؤون البيئية (الهموم) ، فإن الحيوية (النشاط) الاقتصادية للبلدة يجب أن تسمو على (تعلو-تسبق) القضايا البيئية .

Review 2, units 4-6

Grammar and vocabulary

1- Answer these questions using the information given in brackets. In each answer you should include one of these words or phrases:

because - in order to - so that – to

a. Why are forests being cut down? (need more farming land)
Forests are being cut down because we need more farming land.
b. Why do some countries need extra farming land? (grow / food / growing populations)
They need extra farming land (in order / so as) to grow food for the growing populations.
c. Why do people move away from desert areas? (find food and water)
They move away from desert areas (in order) to find food and water.
d. Why do we need to protect some animals? (not become extinct)
We need to protect some animals (so that / in order that) they do not become extinct.
e. What is the purpose of places like the Eden Project? (show / our dependence / plants)
The purpose of places like the Eden Project is to show our dependence on plants.
f. Why are some animals like the sand gazelle under threat? (people / destroy / habitat)
Some animals like the sand gazelle are under threat because people are destroying their habitat.
g. Why is the ice in the polar areas melting? (climate change / global warming)
Ice in the polar areas is melting because climate change is causing global warming.

2- Rewrite these sentences to include the modal verb phrases in brackets in your answers.

a. I know it's true that the world is getting warmer, because the polar ice is melting. (must be)
The polar ice must be melting because the world is getting warmer.
b. The ground is wet here. That means this was almost certainly a lake once. (must have been)
The ground is wet here. There must have been a lake here once. / It must have been a lake once.
c. I'm not sure but I think some parts of the desert were covered in plants and trees. (might have been)
Some parts of the desert might have been covered in plants and trees.
d. I'm sure that bats aren't birds – they don't have feathers. (can't be)
Bats can't be birds - they don't have feathers.
e. These people are very thin, that's why I'm certain they haven't eaten much food lately. (can't have)
These people are very thin, they can't have eaten much food lately.

3- Complete these sentences by adding the correct prepositions.

- a- Oranges are a different colour **from** / **to** lemons.
- b- Plants and animals are dependent **on** a regular supply of water.
- c- The Syrian people are aware **of** the need to protect their wildlife.
- d- Dmeir is famous **for** its watering system.
- e- Many people are interested in the future of endangered animals.

4- Complete this text by using the correct form of the verbs in brackets. You will need to use present and past tenses of active or passive verbs.

Al Ain, an ancient oasis city, is the second biggest city in Abu Dhabi. It (1) **is located** (locate) 160 km east of the capital and (2) **is linked** (link) to Abu Dhabi City by fast motorways. It (3) **takes** (take) about 90 minutes to drive between the two cities. Al Ain's International Airport, which (4) **was opened** (open) in 1994, (5) **has** (have) over half a million passengers each year. In the past, Al Ain was famous for its traditional system of watering the land. Water (6) **was directed** (direct) through man-made tunnels to local farms. Now, its modern system (7) ensures (ensure) that an area of 100 square km around Al Ain (8) **is covered** (cover) in trees and other plants. Even the six-lane roads in the city (9) **are lined** (line) with many different kinds of trees and other plants. Everything (10) **is watered** (water) by a mixture of recycled waste water and desalinated water. Many salad crops (11) **are produced** (produce) by farmers in the area around the city. These (12) **include** (include) tomatoes, cucumbers, lettuce and strawberries

إن مدينة العين الموجودة في واحة قديمة هي ثاني أكبر مدينة في أبوظبي ، تقع على بعد ١٦٠ كم شرق العاصمة و ترتبط مع مدينة أبوظبي بطرق سريعة . تستغرق القيادة بين المدينتين حوالي ٩٠ دقيقة . إن مطار العين الدولي و الذي افتتح عام ١٩٩٤ يستقبل أكثر من نصف مليون مسافر كل عام . في الماضي كانت العين مشهورة بنظام سقاية الأرض التقليدي . لقد تم توجيه المياه عبر قنوات من صنع البشر إلى المزارع المحلية . حالياً يضمن النظام الحديث أن تكون منطقة مساحتها ١٠٠ كم مربع حول العين مغطاة بالأشجار و النباتات الأخرى . حتى الطرق ذات الستة مسارات (حارات) في المدينة مرصوفة (مزروعة -مكسوة) بأنواع مختلفة من الأشجار و النباتات الأخرى . و يتم سقاية كل شيء بمزيج من المياه المكررة (مياه الصرف الصحي) و المياه المحلاة (من مياه البحر) كما ينتج العديد من محاصيل (خضار) السلطة من قبل المزارعين في المنطقة حول العين . و هذا يتضمن الطماطم ، الخيار ، الخس و الفراولة.

P – 53

5- Copy and complete these definitions with words from this list. You do not need to use all of the words.

Alone climate dust habitat originally

Permanent protect soil structure survive

- Originally** means 'at first' or 'in the beginning'.
- If we **protect** something or someone, we stop it from being damaged or harmed.
- The opposite of 'temporary' is **permanent** .
- The area where an animal normally lives and sleeps is called its habitat .
- To **survive** means to stay alive, especially in difficult situations.
- Plants grow in **soil** .
- We use the word **climate** to refer to the weather conditions that are typical of a country or region.

Ibrahim Chanam**6- Choose the verb with the appropriate prefix to complete these conversations.****a**

A: I thought you said we'd meet at 8.30 p.m.

B: I said 9.30 p.m. You must have misread / *reread* my email.**b**

A: I didn't think I'd spend so much money. I haven't got enough left.

B: The shop assistant must have overcharged / *undercharged* you.**c**

A: Why aren't you eating those potatoes?

B: They're too hard. We obviously *overcooked* / undercooked them.**d**

A: Be careful. Those chemicals are very dangerous.

B: They're only dangerous if you misuse / *reuse* them.**e**

A: I want to listen to that side of the cassette again.

B: Then you'll have to *overwind* / rewind it.**Students' Book – P 54**

Write a leaflet aimed at people of your age to make people aware of the need to protect the environment

The state of the environment is one of the most pressing issues in our time. Human activities have a negative impact on the environment. There are so many things we can do to protect the environment. We can use public transportation, buy sustainable products and we can conserve non – renewable sources of energy. Besides, we have to recycle our rubbish. In short, we can make an important impact with small changes.

إن حالة (وضع) البيئة هي واحدة من بين أكثر المسائل الملحة في عصرنا . النشاطات البشرية لها تأثير سيء على البيئة . هناك أشياء عديدة نستطيع أن نعملها لحماية البيئة . نحن نستطيع أن نستخدم المواصلات العامة ، نشترى منتجات مستدامة و بإمكاننا أن نحافظ على موارد الطاقة الغير متجددة . بالإضافة إلى ذلك يجب علينا أن نعيد تصنيع نفاياتنا . باختصار نستطيع أن نحدث تأثيراً هاماً بتغييرات صغيرة .

UNIT 7
Healthy lifestyle

P – 58

1. What do you think is the secret of a healthy life?

In the last hundred years, people have been living longer and longer. Yet, there are still many aspects of our lifestyles that could be improved. Doctors advise that regular exercise and a healthy diet are crucial to our well-being. Furthermore, it is very important to get enough sleep – 8 hours a night is recommended. Getting enough sleep keeps our minds fresh, but we need to exercise our brains, too. This could involve doing puzzles and crosswords, playing chess or reading a book. As we get older, it is even more important that we keep busy, interacting with people of all ages and socialising. We should make plans for the future, keep a positive outlook on life and enjoy the support of the family environment.

في السنوات المئة الماضية ، كان الناس يعيشون أطول و أطول . حتى الآن (و مع ذلك) لا يزال يوجد العديد من المظاهر التي بالإمكان تحسينها في أنماط حياتنا . فالأطباء ينصحون أن التمرين المنتظم و الحمية الغذائية الصحية أمران حاسمان لصحتنا . علاوة على ذلك من المهم جداً الحصول على قسط كاف من النوم - و يُنصح بثمان ساعات في الليلة . إن الحصول على قسط كاف من النوم يُبقي عقولنا منتعشة ، و لكننا نحتاج أن ندرّب عقولنا (أدمغتنا) أيضاً . قد يتضمن ذلك حل الألغاز و الكلمات المتقاطعة ، لعب الشطرنج أو قراءة كتاب ما . و عندما نكبر يكون من المهم أكثر أن نبقى أنفسنا مشغولين ، نتفاعل مع الناس من كل الأعمار و نتواصل اجتماعياً . يجب أن نعد خططاً للمستقبل ، أن نحافظ على نظرة اجتماعية إيجابية إلى الحياة و أن نستمتع بدعم (تقوية) الروابط العائلية (الجو العائلي).

a- What do you think is the secret of a healthy life?

- (Suggested answers) regular exercise; healthy diet; getting enough sleep; keeping the brain active

b- What problems do you associate with old age?

- (Suggested answers) being less able to move around easily; higher possibility of medical problems.

P – 59

5- Fill the gaps in these sentences with the words from the box.

fathers parents children daughters husband sister uncle family

In Syria you will rarely find 'old people's homes'. When my (a) **parents** get old, my (b) **sister** and I will help look after them. Traditional values teach sons and (c) **daughters** to honour their (d) **fathers** and mothers and show love and care to them as they grow old. Family is very important to everyone, and I am very close to my mother's sister and her (e) **husband** – my aunt and (f) **uncle** . Caring for our (g) **family** like this helps us all to live longer, happier lives and we know our (h) **children** will one day look after us.

في سوريا نادراً ما نرى دوراً لرعاية العجزة . عندما يكبر والداي في السن سنعتني أنا و أختي بهما . إن القيم التقليدية تعلم الأولاد و البنات أن يُجلّوا (يقدرُوا) آباءهم و أمهاتهم و أن يظهروا الحب و العناية بهما عندما يكبرا . إن العائلة مهمة جداً للجميع ، و أنا مقرب جداً من خالتي و زوجها . إن العناية (الاهتمام) بالعائلة هكذا يساعدنا في العيش حياةً أطول و أسعد . و نحن نعرف أن أولادنا سيعتنون بنا ذات يوم .

6- Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.

- In Mexico she met the (*Earth's* / **world's**) oldest married couple.
- Alberto and Maria's son said his parents had (**a simple** / *an easy*) way of life.
- Sunil says his customers are all his (*near* / **close**) friends.
- Sunil said he'd enjoyed every (*one* / **single**) day of his life.

P – 60

1. Complete these sentences with the correct form of *make* or *do*.

- a- The journalist said she was **doing** research for an article.
- b- Scientists frequently **do** experiments to test their ideas.
- c- You will have to **make** a special effort if you want to pass your exam.
- d- Can I **make** a suggestion? Why don't we **do** the shopping together?
- e- If you **make** a mistake, you have to **do** your homework again.
- f- I've **made** my decision very carefully.
- g- I've **made** myself a promise. I'm going to **make** a success of my new job.
- h- Last night's storm **did** a lot of damage to buildings in our area.

2. Match the phrasal verbs with *make* in this text with the correct meanings a–c below.

Ibrahim usually arrives at work on time, so his boss didn't know what to (1) make of it when he was an hour late one morning. At first, he thought he might (2) make up an excuse, but decided he must be honest. Ibrahim promised he would (3) make up for the time he had lost by being late.

Phrasal verb	meaning
1- make of it	c think about / understand
2- make up an excuse	a invent (a story)
3- make up for	b replace something lost or missing

3. Match the phrasal verbs with *do* in these sentences with the correct meanings 1–4 below.

- a. I've hurt my back which means I have to get someone to do my shoes up for me.
- b. The doctor told my grandmother she'd have to learn to do without sugar.
- c. We'll have to do the room up before anyone sleeps there.
- d. Not everyone in our family has a mobile so we can't do away with our landline.

Phrasal verb	meaning
a. do my shoes up	3 fasten / tie
b. do without	4 not have something and manage in spite of this
c. do the room up	1 to tidy, redecorate
d. do away with	2 get rid of

P – 61 Grammar

1- Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets

- a- One of their sons told me that his parents **had spent** (spend) every day of their lives together
- b- He said they **had always had** (always have) a good social life and **had kept** (keep) in regular touch with their family, friends and neighbours.
- c- He said he **was** (be) not sure, but suggested that ...
- d- He added that they **had both been involved** (both be involved) in farming for most of their lives.
- e- Mrs Chin said she **had never done** (never do) paid work.

3. In extracts 1a-e, what were the speakers' actual words?

- a. My parents spent every day of their lives together ...
- b. They always had a good social life and kept in regular touch ...
- c. I'm not sure, but I suggest that ...

Ibrahim Chanam

- d. They were both/have both been involved ...
- e. I never did paid/have never done work.

4. Complete the sentences with some of the words from this list.**if what which who whether where**

- a- I asked their son **what** the secret of their healthy life was.
- b- I asked him **whether / if** he remembered his wedding day.
- c- I asked him **whether / if** he had enjoyed his long life.

5. In extracts 4 a-c, what were the journalist's actual questions?

- a. What is the secret of their healthy life?
- b. Do you remember your wedding day?
- c. Have you enjoyed your long life?

(NOTE: NOT Did you enjoy ..., because that means the life is finished.)**6. Report these statements and questions. The beginnings of the answers are given.**

a- How long have you been married?	I asked my grandparents how long they had been married.
b- Do you enjoy spending time with each other?	I asked them if / whether they enjoyed spending time with each other.
c- We don't argue about anything.	They said they didn't argue about anything.
d- We're taking our grandchildren on holiday.	They said they were taking their grandchildren on holiday.
e- When did you first meet?	She asked them when they had first met.
f- Are you enjoying married life?	She asked them if / whether they were enjoying married life.

P – 62 Reading

A magazine article

So you want to be a good colleague?

1 Do you enjoy reading about how some people become successful? Most people do, which is probably why popular magazines often include articles with titles like *How to live a long, happy life*, which give readers useful advice.

2 One of my friends said to me the other day, "I'm starting my first job soon, and I want to get on well with my new workmates. Have you got any advice you can give me?" Several people have asked me questions like this, which is why I'm writing this article.

3 For me the golden rule when you first start a job is this: listen and learn from colleagues. Also, ask your colleagues questions if you aren't sure about something and offer to help them if you can see something that needs doing.

4 In the long run, the best way to be a good colleague is simply to work hard. In my experience, people most dislike colleagues who make up excuses for not doing something and expect colleagues to do it for them.

5 If you have a job starting soon, remember some of these tips. In the end, you'll be happier and more successful if you get on well with your colleagues.

إذا تريد أن تصبح زميلاً جيداً

١- هل تستمتع بقراءة كيف يصبح الناس ناجحين؟ معظم الناس يفعلون و لهذا السبب على الأرجح تُضمن (تضع) المجلات المشهورة مقالات بعنوانين مثل **كيف تحيا حياةً طويلةً سعيدةً** والتي تعطي القراء نصائح مفيدة .

٢- قال لي أحد أصدقائي في اليوم الفائت ، " سوف أبدأ عملي الأول قريباً ، و أريد أن أنسجم جيداً مع رفاقي في العمل . هل عندك أية نصائح تستطيع أن تقدمها لي ؟ " عدة أناس سألوني أسئلةً مثل لماذا تكتب هذه المقالة .

٣- بالنسبة لي القاعدة الذهبية عندما تبدأ عملاً جديداً هي : استمتع و تعلم من زملائك . و اسأل زملاءك أيضاً أسئلةً إذا كنت غير متأكد من شيء ما و اعرض المساعدة عليهم إذا (رأيت شيئاً يحتاج أن يُنجز) كنت تستطيع أن ترى شيئاً يحتاج أن ينجز .

٤- و على المدى البعيد فإن الطريقة الأفضل لتكون زميلاً جيداً هي ببساطة أن تعمل بجد . من خلال تجربتي ، أكثر ما يكرهه الناس هم الزملاء الذين يختلفون الأعذار لكي لا يقوموا بشيء ما و يتوقعون من زملاءهم أن يقوموا بذلك عنهم .

٥- إذا كان عندك عمل (وظيفة) تبدأه قريباً تذكر بعض تلك النصائح . ففي النهاية سوف تكون أسعد و أكثر نجاحاً إذا انسجمت جيداً مع زملائك .

3. Match each paragraph of the article with one of the following headings.

- 2 An explanation of why the writer wrote this article
- 4 Don't be lazy!
- 5 A final message to the reader
- 1 An opening question
- 3 Initial advice

Students' book p 63

Write a magazine article giving advice for people of your own age who are about to start a new job

Beginning a new job can be stressful. Here are some useful tips for people who are about to start a new job. For your first day wake up early. Eat breakfast, wash and put your smartest work clothes. Try to arrive to your office 15 minutes early. Another important tip is when someone asks you to do something, don't make up excuses for not doing it. When you start a new job remember some of these tips.

إن البدء (المباشرة) بوظيفة جديدة يمكن أن يكون مسبباً للتوتر . فيما يلي بعض النصائح للناس الذين هم على وشك أن يبدأوا بوظيفة جديدة . من أجل يومك الأول استيقظ باكراً . تناول الإفطار ، اغتسل و ارتدي أفضل ملابس عمل لديك . حاول الوصول إلى مكتبك أبكر بربع ساعة . نصيحة هامة أخرى هي عندما يطلب منك أحدهم أن تعمل شيئاً لا تختلق الأعذار لكي لا تقوم بذلك . عندما تباشرو بعمل جديد تذكر بعض هذه النصائح .

Students' Book P – 63

Write an article on doing well at school

Doing well at school helps you to determine your future . There are many ways to improve your study. First, have your necessary materials all the time in order not to waste time and important information. Be organized and keep a calendar in order to write down all your notes. Besides, your attendance at school is important because you don't want gaps in your learning. In my experience these things can make you do well at school.

أن تبلي جيداً في المدرسة ذلك سيحدد مستقبلك . هناك طرق عديدة لتحسين دراستك . أولاً ، احصل على كل موادك (مستلزماتك) الضرورية طوال الوقت لكي لا تضيع الوقت و المعلومات الهامة . كن منظماً و احتفظ بمفكرة لكي تدون كل ملاحظاتك . بالإضافة إلى ذلك فإن حضورك في المدرسة أمر هام لأنك لا تريد ثغرات في تعليمك . بحسب تجربتي هذه الأمور تستطيع بشكل مؤكد أن تجعلك تبلي أفضل في المدرسة .

Students' Book P – 63

Write an article on being a good brother

The best way to start having a better relationship with your siblings is to spend time with them. You should be responsible and avoid violence towards them. It's a good idea to build and keep their trust. When they tell you something , don't go and tell your parents. Share what you have with them. Never do things like this expecting something in return. Do it because you want to be a good brother.

الطريقة الأفضل لبدء علاقة أفضل مع الأخوة هي أن تمضي المزيد من الوقت معهم . يجب ان تكون مسؤولاً و تتجنب العنف تجاههم . إنها لفكرة جيدة أن تبني ثقتهم و تحافظ عليها . عندما يخبروك بشيء ما ، لا تذهب و تخبر والديك . تشارك ما تملكه مع أخوتك . لا تقم بالأشياء متوقعاً شيئاً بالمقابل . قم بذلك لأنك تريد أن تكون أخاً جيداً .

UNIT 8
Urban and rural life

page 64 - Exercise 2

Before you read the article on page 65, guess and match these words and phrases with their meanings:

مهجور	a deserted	4 empty because people have left
ساكن – قاطن	b inhabitant	6 someone who lives in a place
مزدحم – مكتظ	c overcrowding	5 having too many people
ظاهرة	d phenomenon	1 something that happens or exists
مربح	e profitable	3 making money
خدمات – مرافق عامة	f public services	7 transport, education and health
ريفي	g rural	2 adjective to describe the countryside (not town)

As you read the article on page 65, answer these questions.

- a- What two-word phrase is used for the movement of people out of country areas?
rural depopulation
- b- Who now lives in remote villages and country areas? The article mentions two groups of people. **elderly people; wealthy people**

The end of village life?

When large numbers of people move from their homes in country areas to find better- paid jobs in towns and cities, the villages and farms they once lived in are often left empty. No one wants to buy homes there because they cannot make money out of them. This phenomenon , which is called rural depopulation, can lead to overcrowding in cities as well as to fewer people in country areas.

One example of this phenomenon is the Garrigues area of Spain, about one hour's drive from Barcelona. The area has a Mediterranean climate, but because it is high and not close to the sea, winter temperatures are quite low. The area has an annual rainfall level of 482mm which falls in only 47 days of the year, during the autumn and spring. Historically, this was a successful agricultural area; on the higher ground, the farmers grew almonds and vines, while in the river valleys, wheat, corn, beans and sunflowers were the traditional crops. The area was particularly well-known for its high-quality olive oil which was grown mainly for export.

The population of the area was at its highest about 150 years ago, when a typical village might have 500 inhabitants, whereas now some villages have as few as 100 permanent inhabitants. But as farming became less and less profitable, and unemployment grew, the population began to move to the cities to

نهاية حياة القرية

عندما ينتقل أعداد كبيرة من الناس من منازلهم في المناطق الريفية لكي يجدوا أعمالاً ذات أجور أفضل في البلدات و المدن فإن القرى و المزارع التي عاشوا فيها يوماً (ذات مرة) غالباً ما تترك خاوية . لا أحد يريد أن يشتري منازل هناك لأنهم لا يستطيعون أن يكسبوا مالاً منها هذه الظاهرة التي تسمى حرمان المناطق الريفية من سكانها يمكن أن تسبب (تقود إلى) ازدحاماً شديداً في المدن بالإضافة إلى أعداد أقل من الناس في المناطق الريفية . أحد الأمثلة عن هذه الظاهرة هو منطقة غاريغز في إسبانيا و التي تبعد حوالي الساعة (بالسيارة) عن برشلونا . للمنطقة مناخ متوسطي و لكن لأنها عالية و ليست قريبة من البحر فإن درجات الحرارة في الشتاء منخفضة جداً . لهذه المنطقة منسوب هطول مطري سنوي يبلغ ٤٨٢ ملم و الذي يتساقط فقط في ٤٧ يوماً في العام ، خلال فصلي الخريف و الربيع. تاريخياً كانت هذه المنطقة ناجحة زراعياً ، ففي مناطق الأراضي الأعلى زرع الفلاحون شجر اللوز و الكرمة ، بينما في وديان النهر كان القمح ، الذرة ، الفول و عباد الشمس هي المحاصيل التقليدية . كانت المنطقة مشهورة على وجه الخصوص بزيت الزيتون عالي الجودة و الذي كان يُزرع فقط من أجل التصدير .

كان عدد السكان في أوجه في المنطقة منذ حوالي ١٥٠ عاماً مضى ، عندما كانت القرية المثالية (ربما كانت تضم) ٥٠٠ قاطناً ، بينما الآن تضم بعض القرى ما يعادل مئة قاطن دائم . و لكن عندما أصبحت الزراعة ذات مردود أقل و أقل ، و ارتفعت نسبة البطالة بدأ السكان ينتقلون إلى

Ibrahim Chanam

find work. This trend started in 1860 and has continued to this day. Now some villages consist mainly of elderly people. The area is suffering from the effects of depopulation, such as poor public services and deserted farms.

In some parts of Europe in recent years, however, the move from the country to the city has been reversed as wealthy people move to the countryside to escape from the overcrowding, pollution and stress of city life. Some are moving permanently, but many are buying holiday or weekend homes which are empty for much of the year.

المدن لكي يجدوا عملاً . بدأت هذه النزعة (الميل) عام ١٨٦٠ و استمرت حتى يومنا هذا . حالياً ، تتألف بعض البلدات فقط من كبار السن. تعاني المنطقة من آثار الحرمان من السكان كالخدمات العامة الفقيرة و المزارع المهجورة . في بعض أرجاء أوروبا في السنوات القليلة الماضية ، بأي حال ، انعكست الهجرة (الانتقال-الحركة) من الريف إلى المدينة ، عندما بدأ الأثرياء ينتقلون إلى الريف للهروب من الازدحام الشديد ، التلوث و الإجهاد من حياة المدينة . بعضهم ينتقلون بشكل دائم و لكن البعض الآخر يشتررون منازل لقضاء العطلات بأنواعها (نهاية الأسبوع - إجازات) و التي تكون فارغة (خالية) لمعظم العام .

4- Read the article again and answer these questions.

a- Define 'depopulation' in your own words.

'Depopulation' happens when people leave the countryside to look for work in cities. Their villages and farms are left empty, and no one wants to live in the country because there are few jobs there.

b- How does this affect the country areas?

They are depopulated, therefore public services are poor and farms are deserted.

c- How can it affect the towns and cities?

They become overcrowded and polluted.

d- List four characteristics of Garrigues.

Garrigues has a Mediterranean climate, is cold in winter, has low rainfall, was a successful agricultural area; crops are grown on higher ground and in river valleys; its olive oil was well-known.

e- Why did people start to move out of Garrigues?

to find work

P – 66 Vocabulary**1. Match the words on the left with things that make those sounds.**

Note All these words can be used as nouns or verbs.

صوت اغلاق الباب بقوة	a. bang	5 a door closing very noisily / a hammer hitting something hard
صوت قفل حزام الأمان- مصباح	b. click	3 a light switch / a car seat belt being fastened
صوت تنقيط الماء	c. drip	7 a tap that hasn't been turned off
هدير المحرك - ضجة المرور	d. roar	1 traffic / plane engine
صرخة - يصرخ	e. scream	2 a person who is in pain or very frightened
طرشة الماء	f. splash	8 something falling into water
صوت ساعة قديمة	g. tick	4 an old-fashioned clock
يصفر - صفير	h. whistle	6 the wind in the trees / a bird

Idioms with and**2. Complete these sentences with idioms from this list.****pick and choose nearest and dearest odds and ends far and wide hustle and bustle**

- a- People come from **far and wide** to see the Umayyad Mosque in the centre of Damascus.
- b- I love spending time with my **nearest and dearest**, so we often have family get-togethers.
- c- While I was on holiday I bought lots of **odds and ends** to give as presents.
- d- There are lots of restaurants near here. You can **pick and choose** from about fifty.
- e- Some people enjoy the **hustle and bustle** of shopping in street markets.

Word families**3. Complete these sentences with words derived from the words in brackets.**

- a. Deir ez-Zour is an area of great **natural** beauty. (nature)
- b. Careless drivers can seriously **threaten** the safety of pedestrians. (threat)
- c. In my city there is a wide **variety** of entertainments to choose from. (vary)
- d. I'd like to live in a small **peaceful** village near the sea. (peace)
- e. The storm damage is a lasting **reminder** of the power of nature. (remind)
- f. I'll never forget the **excitement** I felt on my first day at school. (excite)

P – 67 Grammar**Comparing and contrasting****1- Which words and phrases in these sentences are used to compare or contrast two things, people, or situations?**

- a- ... 150 years ago, when a typical village might have had 500 inhabitants, **whereas** now some villages have as few as 100 permanent inhabitants.
- b- **In comparison with** village life, city life can be quite stressful.
- c- **On the other hand**, some people prefer an exciting city to a quiet village.
- d- **Instead of** buildings, all I can see from my window are fields and trees.
- e- Farming is **less** profitable **than** it used to be.

2- What is being compared or contrasted in each of the sentences in exercise 1?

In sentence **1a** the writer is contrasting the population of a typical village 150 years ago with its population today

1b village life / city life **1c** village life / city life **1d** buildings / fields and trees **1e** farming now / farming in the past.

3- For each letter, a-f, write two sentences contrasting the information in these lists. Use these words and phrases: *on the other hand, instead of, in comparison with, but, whereas.*

City people**Country people****a ▶ have to drive slowly****▶ can drive quite fast**

- a- City people have to drive slowly, whereas country people can drive quite fast.
- In comparison with city people, country people can drive quite fast.

b ▶ often live in apartments**▶ usually live in houses**

- b- City people often live in apartments, whereas country people usually live in houses.
- City people often live in apartments. On the other hand, country people ...

c ▶ shop in supermarkets**▶ shop in small shops**

- c- Instead of shopping in supermarkets, like city people, country people often shop in small shops.
- City people often shop in supermarkets, whereas country people ...
- City people often shop in supermarkets. On the other hand, country people ...

d ▶ buy vegetables from shops**▶ often grow their own vegetables**

- d- Instead of buying vegetables from shops, like city people, country people often grow their own vegetables.
- City people buy vegetables from shops, whereas country people ...
- City people often buy vegetables from shops. On the other hand, country people ...

e ▶ often don't know their neighbours**▶ have friendly neighbours**

- e- In comparison with country people, who have friendly neighbours, city people often don't know their neighbours.
- Country people often have friendly neighbours, but city people ...

f ▶ often have stressful lives**▶ have quite relaxing lives**

- f- In comparison with country people, who have quite relaxing lives, city people often have stressful lives.
- Country people often have quite relaxing lives, but city people ...

Writing An email giving recommendations

Dear Mr and Mrs Mahmoud,
 I think I've found the perfect place for you. It's a palatial villa in a green suburban area that would really suit your needs. I know you've been complaining about the noise in your current apartment, so the location of the new one would be a great improvement. It's quiet and calm and there's a picturesque park just over the road. There isn't even much traffic, and with residents' parking you'll never have trouble finding a space. It's also a lot more expansive than your current place and would have lots of room for entertaining. It's not furnished, so all of the furniture you already own could go straight in. You could make it your own very quickly. It's also an advantageous location. There's a large supermarket about five minutes away and it's very easy to reach the motorway. I really think you should arrange a viewing of this place. It's a great find that you wouldn't want to miss out on.
 Many thanks,
 Ali

عزيزي السيد و السيدة محمود
 أعتقد أنني وجدت المكان (المطلق) المثالي لكما . إنها فيلا ملكية في ضاحية خضراء ستلائم احتياجاتكما فعلاً . أعرف أنكما كنتما تتذمران بسبب الضجيج في شقتكما الحالية. لذلك فإن الموقع الجديد سيشكل تقدماً (تحسناً عظيماً . إنها هادئة و ساكنة (وادة) كما يوجد حديقة ساحرة مباشرةً فوق الطريق . حتى أنه لا يوجد الكثير من المرور (السير)، و بوجود أماكن ركن للسيارات لن تعاني أبداً في إيجاد مكان (للركن) . كما أنها أكثر رحابة بكثير من مكانكم الحالي و سيكون فيها الكثير من المساحة للترفيه (التسوية) . هي (الفلا) ليست مفروشة ، لذلك فإن كل الأثاث الذي تمتلكونه يمكن أن يتسع (يوضع-يدخل) . بإمكانكما أن تحصلا عليها فوراً (بسرعة) . كما أن لها أيضاً موقعاً مميزاً . و يوجد سوبر ماركت كبير يبعد حوالي خمس دقائق و من السهل جداً الوصول إلى الطريق العام . أعتقد حقاً أن عليكما أن ترتباً لرؤية هذا المكان . إنها لقية (اكتشاف- لقطة) عظيمة لن ترغبا في تفويتها (إضاعتها).
 و لكم جزيل الشكر
 علي

Students' Book – P 69

Write about the most suitable place to live for a family of four, a young couple and an elderly couple

Dear ...

I think your family needs to live in this suburban area. This house is multigenerational and is more convenient than any other place. It has a lift inside. Moreover, this place offers everything from access to the beautiful countryside to the lively city center 2 km away. The streets are calm and lovely for walks and safe biking . There are a shopping mall and a gym. Just about everything you need is on your door step.

عزيزي ...

أعتقد أن عائلتك تحتاج أن تعيش في منطقة الضواحي هذه. هذا المنزل مناسب لكل الأجيال و هو ملائم أكثر من أي مكان آخر. يوجد مصعد في الداخل. علاوةً على ذلك، يقدم هذا المكان كل شيء من الدخول (العبور) إلى الريف الجميل، إلى مركز المدينة الحيوي الذي يبعد فقط ٢ كم. الشوارع هادئة و جميلة بالنسبة للسير و ركوب الدراجات الآمن. هناك مركز تسوق و نادي. تماماً كل ما تحتاجه موجود بجانب باب بيتك.

UNIT 9
New ways and old

P – 72

Vocabulary Musical instruments**1- Match the words with the correct pictures.**

1. piano
2. tabliah
3. accordion
4. violin
5. flute
6. guitar
7. trumpet
8. Oud

**2- How do you play each kind of instrument? Complete these sentences using verbs from this list.**

blow bow hit pluck strum

- a. You have to **blow** saxophones and trumpets.
- b. You can **pluck** or **strum** a guitar, but you usually **bow** a violin.
- c. You **hit** percussion instruments with sticks or your hands.

MUSIC IDIOMS**3- Match the underlined music idioms in these sentences with one of the meanings 1-4.**

- a. Laila is very good at blowing her own trumpet, so she'll probably get that job. **3**
- b. If you break the law, you have to face the music. **1**
- c. The importance of crossing the road safely is drummed into children when they are very young. **4**
- d. Omar said he was going to buy a Porsche, but he changed his tune when he discovered the price. **2**

Meanings

1. put up with the consequences of something one has done / accept punishment
2. change one's mind
3. boast / say good things about oneself
4. teach by frequent repetition

p – 73

GRAMMAR**Having things done****2 Compare the three sentences below.****What is the difference in meaning between them?**

- *They built their own house.* **They were the builders of their own house.**
- *Their house was built by a local builder.* **A builder built their house.**
- *They had their house built by a local builder.* **They asked a builder to build a house for them.**

3 Write follow-up sentences using causative verbs.

a. I didn't repair the car myself.	<i>I had it repaired.</i>
b. My mother dyed her own dress blue.	She didn't have it dyed.
c. She didn't make the dress herself.	She had it made.
d. He isn't going to take his own photo.	He's going to have it taken.
e. My brother cut his own hair.	He didn't have it cut.
f. My neighbour painted his own house.	He didn't have it painted.
g. My father doesn't clean his car himself.	He has it cleaned.
h. We didn't cut down the trees in our garden ourselves.	We had them cut down.

4 Discuss these questions with a partner and then write sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. What can you have done if you go to a dentist? | <i>You can have a tooth taken out.</i> |
| b. What can you have done if you go to an optician? | <i>You can have your eyes tested.</i> |
| c. What can you have done in your house by a decorator? | <i>You can have your house painted.</i> |

P – 74

Discussion**1- Discuss these questions with a partner.**

- a. What is a biography? How is a biography different from an autobiography?

A biography is an account of a person's life written by another person. An autobiography is an account of a person's life written by that person himself or herself.

- b. Whose biography have you read or would you like to read?
c. What kinds of biographical details could be included under these headings?

(suggested answers)**personal details:** name, date of birth, age, place of birth**physical description:** height, weight / build, hair colour**family and early life:** family background, sisters / brothers, housing, education, interests**career:** qualifications, previous jobs, current job, future prospects**personal life:** friends, marriage, children**important dates:** school, higher education, jobs**beliefs:** what is important in life; principles he / she lives by**achievements:** sport, examinations, music, current and future challenges, etc.**2- Read this brief biography.**

- a- Which information from exercise 1c above is included?

They are all included except:

- physical description
- beliefs

- b- How is this biography constructed? What is the topic of each paragraph?

(suggested answers)**paragraph 1:** family and early life**paragraph 2:** early career**paragraph 3:** the beginning of his new career**paragraph 4:** his continuing success

Self-taught success

Tareq was born in Damascus in 1962 into a successful Syrian family. His father worked as a civil servant and his mother, who had once been a teacher, was a hardworking housewife. His brother Hani was very bright and, after finishing university, went on to become a civil engineer.

Tareq was good with his hands and so, instead of going to university, took a course in woodwork and became a carpenter. He loved Syrian folk music and, in his spare time, made musical instruments, finely crafting instruments such as ouds.

One day, one of his friends saw an oud he had made and asked him to make one for him too. This was the beginning of Tareq's career as an instrument maker and soon he was able to give up selling furniture and make instruments instead. With the money he earned he was able to get married and start a family, buying his own villa outside Damascus. His instruments have become famous across Syria and the Arab world, and there is now a great demand for these instruments. One of Tareq's sons, Saleh, has decided to follow his father into the business and so Tareq is teaching him how to make the oud.

نجاح ذاتي التعلم

ولد طارق في دمشق عام ١٩٦٢ لعائلة سورية ناجحة . عمل والده كمستخدمٍ مدني و والدته التي كانت مدرّسة يوماً كانت ربة منزل مجتهدة . كان أخوه هاني متألقاً و بعد إنهاء الجامعة (إكمال تعليمه) أصبح مهندساً مدنياً . كان طارق بارعاً باستخدام يديه و لذلك بدلاً من أن يدخل الجامعة اتبع دورةً في عمل الخشب و أصبح نجاراً . لقد أحبّ الموسيقى الشعبية السورية ، و في وقت فراغه ، صنع آلات موسيقية ، مصنّعةً على نحو ممتاز (راق) آلات مثل العود . ذات يوم رأى أحد أصدقائه عوداً كان قد صنعه و طلب منه أن يصنع واحداً له أيضاً . كانت تلك بداية سيرة طارق المهنية كصانع آلات موسيقية و سريعاً أصبح قادراً أن يترك بيع المفروشات و يصنع الآلات الموسيقية بدلاً من ذلك . بالمال الذي كسبه كان قادراً أن يتزوج و يؤسس عائلة ، (مشترياً) و اشترى الفيلا الخاصة به خارج دمشق .

لقد أصبحت آلاته مشهورة عبر سوريا و العالم العربي و هناك الآن طلب كبير لهذه الآلات . أحد أبناء طارق ، صالح قرر أن يسير على خطا والده في العمل و طارق يعلمه حالياً كيف يصنع العود .

Students' Book – P 75**Write a short biography of someone you know or know about**

Dina Katabi was born in 1971 into a highly educated family. She grew up in Damascus. She has one sister in New York and another in Dubai, but her parents are still in Damascus. Dina moved from Syria to USA after she finished her bachelor's degree at the university of Damascus. She got a PhD in Electrical Engineering and Computer Science from MIT. In 2013, she won the Genius Grant.

ولدت دينا خطابي عام ١٩٧١ لعائلة عالية الثقافة . لقد ترعرعت في حي المالكي في دمشق . لديها أخت في مدينة نيويورك و أخرى في دبي، و لكن والديها لا يزالان في دمشق . انتقلت دينا من سوريا إلى الولايات المتحدة بعد أن أنهت درجة البكالوريوس في جامعة دمشق . حصلت على الدكتوراه في الهندسة الكهربائية و علوم الكمبيوتر من معهد ماساتشوستس التقني . في عام ٢٠١٣ فازت بمنحة العبقرة .

Review 3, units 7-9

Grammar and Vocabulary

1- Rewrite this interview using reported speech in your notebook. (Use the reporting verb *ask* when you rewrite the questions, and *said* for Mr Mahmoud's answers.)

- **Interviewer:** Good afternoon, Mr Mahmoud. Can I ask you why you left your village and moved to the city?
- **I asked Mr Mahmoud why he had left his village and moved to the city.**
- **Mr Mahmoud:** The reason I left my village was that I wanted to work in the city.
- **a. Mr Mahmoud / He said he had left his village because he had wanted to work in the city.**
- **Interviewer:** Was it easy to find work?
- **b. I asked if / whether it had been easy to find work.**
- **Mr M:** Yes, it was very easy. I was offered two jobs in two days.
- **c. He said it had been very easy. He had been offered two jobs in two days.**
- **Interviewer:** What are you doing?
- **d. I asked what he was doing.**
- **Mr M:** I'm working for a large travel agency in the city centre.
- **e. He said he was working for a large travel agency in the city centre.**
- **Interviewer:** When do you start and finish work?
- **f. I asked when he started and finished work.**
- **Mr M:** I start at seven o'clock in the morning, and finish at five in the evening.
- **g. He said he started at seven o'clock in the morning and finished at five in the evening.**

2- Write sentences comparing and contrasting landline phones with mobile phones. Use the words and phrases in brackets in your answers.

- a- **Mobile phones are more up - to - date than traditional phones.**
- b- Landline phones are fixed in one place **whereas** you can carry mobile phones around with you.
- c- Landline phones are large and heavy. In comparison, mobile phones are small and light.
- (OR Landline phones are large and heavy **in comparison with** mobile phones.)
- d- You can only talk to people on landline phones **but** you can also send text messages with mobile phones.
- e- Long conversations are **more expensive** on mobile phones than on landline phones.

P - 77

- 3- People moved into a flat recently and decided to modernise it. What did they have done? Write eight sentences a-h using a word or phrase from list A and a verb in the correct form from list B. (suggested answers)

A - whole flat	windows	electrical system	old chairs and tables
new furniture	ceilings	air-conditioning	living room

B - service	repaint	replace	check
take away	redecorate	deliver	clean

- They had the whole flat cleaned.**
 - They had the old chairs and tables taken away.
 - They had the air-conditioning serviced.
 - They had the windows replaced.
 - They had new furniture delivered.
 - They had the living room redecorated.
 - They had the electrical system checked.
 - They had the ceilings repainted.
- 4- Replace the phrases in italics in these sentences with the correct form of one of these phrasal verbs

do away with do up do without make up

- Too much salt is bad for you, but you shouldn't *stop eating* it altogether. **do without**
- They've spent weeks *cleaning and redecorating* all the buildings in the city centre. **doing up**
- I hope they don't *get rid of* our village shop – I buy all my food there. **do away with**
- The teacher asked the class to *invent* a story about the sea. **make up**

- 5- Choose the correct words in these sentences.

- My mother's sister is my (*aunt* / *niece*).
- My mother and (*brother* / *father*) have been married for 22 years.
- When I was 12, I (*did* / *made*) the decision not to eat any more fast food.
- Every week I (*do* / *make*) the shopping for my mother.
- I just heard the door (*bang* / *splash*). It sounded as if someone left in a hurry.
- You can (*hit* / *strum*) a guitar or you can (*blow* / *pluck*) the strings individually.

- 6- Copy and complete sentences a-f with words from this list. There are more words than you need.

- I've travelled **far** and wide, but I haven't found anywhere I like as much as my country.
- Most of the time I love the hustle and **bustle** of city life, but I prefer the **peace** and quiet of the countryside when I'm on holiday.
- The new library is wonderful – there are so many books to pick and **choose** from.
- You've changed your **tune** . Yesterday you said you'd never eat fast food again.
- If you drive too fast and the police stop you, you'll just have to face the **music** .
- Mahmoud is very modest – that's why he never **blows** his own trumpet.

Write a poster to promote your culture in the world

I have designed a poster with brilliant pictures for some of the most amazing sights in Syria. It includes the following: Come to Syria and see some of the true wonders of the world. Visit Ugarit in Lattakia the cradle of civilization and the oldest Alphabet in history. Discover the magnificent natural beauty in al-Talila Reserve. In Hama, you can see the unique water wheels. In short, Syria is your perfect destination.

لقد صممت ملصقاً إعلانياً ذو صور رائعة لبعض أكثر الأماكن روعةً في سوريا. يتضمن ما يلي: تعالوا إلى سوريا لكي تروا بعض عجائب العالم الحقيقية. زوروا أوغاريت في اللاذقية مهد الحضارة و أقدم أبجدية في التاريخ. اكتشفوا الجمال الطبيعي المهيّب لمحمية التليلة الطبيعية. في حماة، تستطيعون أن تروا دواليب المياه الفريدة أو النواعير. باختصار إن سوريا هي الوجهة المثالية لكم.

UNIT 10

Record breakers

page 82, exercise 1

1. Look carefully at the photographs of the Tour de France and discuss these questions.

a. What difficulties do you think these cyclists have to face during the competition?

physical exhaustion; crashes; injury

b. What qualities do you think you would need to compete in a race like this?

qualities needed would include: fitness; strength; perseverance; determination

c. Have you ever participated in a very challenging competition? What was it like?

Students' own answers

2. Match each word with its correct meaning. Use a dictionary to help you or to check your answers.

النخبة	a. elite	3 group containing the best / most skilled / most experienced
منافس - ند	b. rival	5 a direct opponent in a particular field
النهائي - الأخير	c. eventual	6 occurring at the end of a series of events
عرض - مشهد	d. spectacle	1 a public display
طموح - طامح	e. aspiring	2 hoping or aiming for a certain thing
تقاني - التزام	f. dedication	4 showing commitment to a cause

Triumph in the Tour de France

For over ten years in the 1970s and 80s Bernard Hinault, a very talented French sportsman, dominated the world of cycling. One of the fastest cyclists of his generation, he won over 200 races during his exceptional career and broke numerous records. He is the only rider to have finished either first or second in every Tour de France which he completed, and won 28 individual stages in the month long race. By the time he retired, he had worn the prestigious 'Yellow Jersey' – one of cycling's most sought after prizes – for over 50 days in total, and had secured his place as one of the best cyclists in the world.

During his career Hinault gained the nickname 'the

الفوز ببطولة (طواف) فرنسا للدراجات

لأكثر من عشر سنوات في سبعينيات و ثمانينيات القرن العشرين سيطر برنارد هينولت و هو رياضي فرنسي موهوب جداً على عالم الدراجات الهوائية . كان أحد أسرع الدراجين في جيله ، فاز بأكثر من مئتي سباق خلال مسيرته الرياضية الاستثنائية و حطم أرقاماً عديدة . لقد كان الدراج الوحيد الذي ينهي السباق إما في المرتبة الأولى أو الثانية في كل بطولة دراجات أكملها (شارك بها) في فرنسا ، لقد فاز بـ ٢٨ مرحلة فردية في السباق الذي يدوم لشهر . في الوقت الذي تقاعد فيه كان قد ارتدى القميص الأصفر "بيلو جرسى" و هو أرقى الجوائز التي يمكن السعي ورائها في عالم الدراجات - لأكثر من خمسين يوماً في الإجمال ، حافظ على مكانه كواحد من أفضل الدراجين في العالم . خلال مسيرته حصل هينولت على لقب "الغريز" بسبب سمعته كونه تنافسي للغاية و يكرس نفسه

badger' on account of his reputation for being extremely competitive and dedicating himself fully to each race. A famous rivalry existed between Hinault and another elite cyclist, Greg Lamond. During the 1986 Tour de France, the two men fought continuously to win the championship, with Lamond emerging as the eventual winner.

Following his retirement in 1986, Hinault did not lose any of his dedication to the world of cycling. To this day he is heavily involved in many high profile cycling events, and is often seen on the stage at awards ceremonies. Hinault has written several books telling the story of his rise to success; they also include details of the difficulties he had encountered on the way: the crashes, injuries and problems. As one of the best cyclists the world has ever seen he was encouraged to write a book for aspiring professional cyclists, giving them tips and realistic advice about how to reach the top. His story shows that becoming the best in any field is a challenge that requires a lot of determination and dedication.

بشكل كامل لكل سباق . لقد نشأت منافسة مشهورة بين هينولت و دراج مرموق آخر هو غريغ لاموند. ففي بطولة فرنسا للدراجات عام ١٩٨٦ حارب الرجلان بشكل متواصل للفوز بالبطولة و برز لاموند على أنه الفائز النهائي .

عقب (تلا- بعد) اعتزاله (تقاعد) عام ١٩٨٦ لم يفقد هينولت أي من إخلاصه (تفانيه) لعالم الدراجات . إلى هذا اليوم هو لا يزال مشترك بشكل كبير في أحداث (نشاطات) عالم الدراجات الهامة (البارزة) ، و هو غالباً ما يُرى على المنصة في مراسم (احتفالات) توزيع الجوائز . لقد ألف هينولت العديد من الكتب مخبراً قصة صعوده إلى النجاح ، و هي تتضمن أيضاً تفاصيل المصاعب التي واجهها في طريقه : الاضطرابات، الإصابات و المشاكل . كواحد من أفضل الدراجين الذين شهدهم العالم ، لقد تم تشجيعه لتأليف كتاب يلهم الدراجين المحترفين ، معطياً إياهم نصائح و مشورات واقعية حول كيفية الوصول إلى القمة (كيف تصل..). . تُظهر قصته أنه لكي يصبح المرء الأفضل في أي مجال هو تحدّي يتطلب الكثير من التصميم و المثابرة (المواظبة - التفاني) .

4- Some of these sentences include incorrect information. Rewrite the incorrect ones, then read the report again to check your answers.

- Bernard Hinault won over 300 races. **False: he won over 200 races**
- Hinault won the Tour de France in 1986. **False: he came second to Greg Lamond**
- Cyclists risk crashes and injury during races. **True**
- Hinault is an aspiring professional cyclist. **False: he was a professional cyclist; he wrote books with advice for aspiring cyclists**

5- Suggest explanations for these extracts from the report.

- A famous rivalry existed between Hinault and another elite cyclist, Greg Lamond.
The two men were both excellent cyclists; they were often competing against one another to be the best.
- To this day he is heavily involved in many high profile cycling events, and is often seen on the stage at awards ceremonies.
Hinault was a very successful cyclist; he is still very well known in the field of cycling.

P - 84

Vocabulary

Phrasal verbs with come

1. Match the verbs underlined in these sentences with the correct meanings 1-7 below.

- It had been cloudy all morning, but in the afternoon the sun came out. **appeared / became visible**
- As we were walking up the mountain, we came across a small camp site. **found by chance**
- Come over when you're next in town. **visit**
- After she fell and hit her head on the ice it was ten minutes before she came round. **recovered after being unconscious**
- A job has come up at the polar research centre – I may apply for it. **become available**
- I wish the price of petrol would come down. **fall / decrease**
- When I was talking to my brother yesterday, your name came up several times. **was mentioned**

Ibrahim Chanam**Adjectives beginning with a-****2. Some adjectives beginning with a- cannot be used in front of a noun.**

For example, we can say: The frightened boy, but not The afraid boy. If we want to use afraid, we have to say: *The boy was afraid.*

a. Match adjectives beginning with a- (List A) with other adjectives which have the same meaning (List B) which can be used in front of nouns.

A	afraid	alight	alike	alive	asleep
B	frightened	burning	sleeping	living	similar

b. Complete as many of these sentences as you can using words from list A. If you can't use list A, use an alternative from list B.

- The fire had started when everyone in the house was **asleep**.
- In less than ten minutes the whole building was **alight**.
- The family escaped, but the parents had to calm their **frightened** children.
- Some people had minor burns, but fortunately everyone was still **alive**.
- The police suspected a crime as there had been four **similar** fires in the previous month.

Grammar**Giving background information****1- Read extracts 1-3 below from the report about Bernard Hinault and answer these questions**

- Which verb tense is used in all these extracts? **past perfect simple.**
- Which main verb event do they provide background to? **1 and 2 by the time he retired 3 before he retired**
 - He had worn the prestigious 'Yellow Jersey'.
 - He had secured his place as one of the best cyclists in the world.
 - They include details of the difficulties he had encountered on the way.

2- Suggest explanations for these facts about Hinault's career, using the words in brackets. Make sentences using verbs in the past perfect simple or the past perfect continuous.

- From a young age, Hinault was dedicated to his training programme.
(always / want / be / cyclist)

He had always wanted to be a cyclist

- At the start of his career in the 1970s, Hinault made a sponsorship deal with a top bicycle company.

(the company / see / great potential / in the young rider)

The company had seen great potential in the young rider.

- After each victory, Hinault did not take all the credit for himself.

(a brilliant team / support / him / throughout)

A brilliant team had been supporting him throughout.

- When he did not win the Tour de France in 1986 Hinault decided to retire.

(lose / to his greatest rival)

He had lost to his greatest rival.

- After retirement he started writing books.

(learn / many things / during his career)

He had learnt many things during his career.

3- Working with a partner, discuss what might have happened leading up to these events and then write sentences using verbs in the past perfect simple or continuous. (You will need to use your imagination.)

- a. By 1978, Eddy Merckx had broken more records than any other cyclist in history. Before he retired his victories included 35 stages of the Tour de France and 11 Grand Tour victories – the most prestigious races in cycling.
- He had trained consistently hard for many years. He had defeated every other cyclist of his generation. He had gained a reputation as a very skilled competitor.
- b. In 1986 Michael Asher was the first westerner to cross the Sahara Desert from west to east on a camel. Before he set off on his journey across the Sahara, Michael Asher had probably learnt how to ride a camel.
- He had travelled to Sudan. He had lived with a tribe who taught him about life in the desert.

Page 86

Speaking

Making difficult choices

Introduction

The situation

Omar and Mazen are driving across the Syrian desert in their 4x4 vehicle when a sandstorm, very common in the area, blows up. There is nothing they can do about the weather and unfortunately sand gets into the engine. Despite their best efforts, the engine simply will not start and so they are forced to change their plans.

The two men are still 30 kilometres away from their destination, that is around 12 hours walking. They know that it is located to the north. However, they are forced to abandon the car and continue the journey on foot, carrying all that they can with them. They have supplies in the car but can only take with them what will fit in their backpacks.

The weather is extremely hot, making walking by day very difficult, but they are in good health and fit enough to walk 30 kilometres under normal conditions. In contrast, the desert is very cold at night and temperatures can become dangerously low. The two men have some difficult decisions to make. Each has room in his bag for three items, and has to choose from the 11 items they have in the car ...

عمر و مازن يقودان سيارتهما ذات الدفع الرباعي عبر الصحراء السورية عندما تهب عاصفة رملية ، و هي شائعة جداً في المنطقة . لا يوجد شيء يستطيعان أن يقوموا به حيال الطقس و لسوء الحظ يدخل الرمل إلى المحرك . و على الرغم من كل (أفضل) جهودهما ، فإن المحرك ببساطة لن يعمل (يدور) و لذلك هما مرغمان على تغيير خططهما .

لا يزال الرجلان على بعد ثلاثين كم عن مقصدهما ، و هو ما يعادل اثنتا عشرة ساعة من المشي . هما يعرفان أن وجهتهما متوضعة (تقع) في الشمال . على كل حال ، هما مرغمان على ترك سيارتهما و أن يكملا سيراً على الأقدام ، حاملين معهما كل ما يستطيعان . لديهما مؤونة في السيارة و لكنهما يستطيعان فقط أن يأخذا ما يناسب حقائبهما الظهرية .

إن الطقس شديد الحرارة ، مما يجعل السير في النهار صعباً جداً ، و لكنهما في صحة جيدة و لياقة كافية (عالية) للسير ٣٠ كم في ظروف عادية . و للتباين فإن الصحراء باردة جداً في الليل و يمكن أن تصبح درجات الحرارة منخفضة بشكلٍ خطير . على الرجلان أن يتخذا بعض القرارات الصعبة .

كل واحد منهما لديه مساحة في حقيبته لثلاث أشياء . و عليه أن يختار من بين الأشياء الإحدى عشرة التي يمتلكها في السيارة

....

Writing - A response to an advert

DO YOU HAVE WHAT IT TAKES?**Are you the kind of person who loves a challenge?****Do you crave adventure and excitement?****Do you long for the chance to prove yourself?**

If the answer to these questions is 'Yes' then you could be just what we're looking for. The Syrian Adventure Club, along with its team of experienced mountaineers, is planning a challenging and arduous expedition to the summit of Mount Everest and we're looking for motivated, strong-willed individuals to assist us. This is the chance of a lifetime to experience one of the planet's most magnificent environments and to take part in an amazing feat of human endeavour. If you think you have what it takes, please write, telling us why you should be chosen for this expedition, what skills and attributes you will contribute, and how you will cope with the huge effort such an expedition entails.

Replies should be about 200 words.**Expeditions Manager, Syrian Adventure Club**

هل عندك الجرأة (الشجاعة) ؟
هل أنت من الأشخاص الذين يحبون التحدي ؟
هل تتوق إلى المغامرة و الإثارة ؟
هل تتوق لفرصة أن تثبت نفسك ؟

إذا كان الجواب "نعم" فقد تكون الشخص الذي نبحث عنه تماماً . إن نادي المغامرات السوري بالإضافة لفريقه من متسلقي الجبال المتمرسين يخططان لبعثة (رحلة تسلق) تحدي شاقة إلى قمة جبل إفرست و نحن نبحث عن أشخاص متحمسين (محفزين) ذوي إرادة قوية لكي يساعدونا . هذه فرصة حياتك لكي تختبر إحدى أروع البيئات على الكوكب و تشارك في مسعى (عمل) إنساني بطولي فذ . إذا كنت تشعر أنك تملك ما يلزم (من الجرأة) ، من فضلك اكتب لنا لتخبرنا لماذا يجب أن يتم اختيارك لهذه البعثة ، ما هي المهارات و الصفات التي ستساهم بها (تشارك) ، و كيف ستتغلب على الصعوبات الكبيرة التي تقتضيها (تستلزمها) بعثة كهذه (كذلك) .

يجب أن تكون الردود من حوالي منتي كلمة
مدير البعثات ، نادي المغامرات السوري

Students' book – P 87

Write a response to an advert for a place on a Syrian expedition to the summit of Mount Everest .

Dear sir

My desire in attempting Everest is not a whim of the moment. I know it's a massive challenge. But I'd take this chance because I have the ambition and the dedication. I can endure intensive physical activity. My body is acclimatized to cold weather. It may be a good idea to hire a good guide who knows the best routes. Getting to the summit of these peaks requires, skill and mental fortitude.

إن رغبتني بمحاولة تسلق إفرست ليست وليدة اللحظة . أنا أعرف أنه تحدٍ هائل . و لكنني سأخذ هذه الفرصة لأنه لدي الطموح و الالتزام (التفاني) . أنا أستطيع أن أتحمل العمل الجسدي المركز . جسمي متأقلم مع الطقس البارد . قد تكون فكرة جيدة إذا استأجرنا دليل جيد يعرف أفضل الطرق . إن تسلق قمم كذلك تتطلب المهارة و الجلد (الثبات) العقلي .

Unit - 11
Future Projects

Unit 11, page 88, exercise 1**Discuss****1. Look at the photographs and discuss these questions with a partner.**

- a** What is the purpose of the dam? **A dam is a wall built across a river to control water flow.**
b How does it work? **It works by blocking the flow of the river.**
c What is the purpose of the lock? **The purpose of the lock is to raise or lower the level of the river.**
d Why do you think the buildings in photograph 3 have been destroyed? **Students' own answers**

P – 89**2. Match these words from the recording with their meanings.**

بناء – تشييد	a. construction	4 the building process, usually of a large structure
يقاطع – يعيق	b. disrupt	6 to upset / disturb / interrupt in a negative way
يحول	c. divert	1 to change the route of a road or river
بالقوة	d. forcibly	2 by force, against one's will
بوابة – قفل	e. lock	3 a short section of a river or canal with gates which allow ships to move to a higher or a lower level
خزان	f. reservoir	5 a large natural or man-made lake for collecting and keeping water

P – 90**Formal / Informal****1. The talk about the Three Gorges Dam is in quite formal English.****a. Match these words with a more informal word or phrase.**

يكمل	1. complete	G finish
يشيد – يبني	2. construct	D build
كامل – كل	3. entire	H whole
يمدد - يطيل	4. extend	F stretch
إقلاع – تأسيس – بداية	5. inception	A beginning
عملياتي – فعال – جاهز للاستخدام	6. operational	C ready to use
تقدم – تطور (يتقدم)	7. progress	B move forward
موقع - مكان	8. site	E place

b. Now complete these sentences with the correct form of an appropriate word from 1a.Decide whether to use the **formal** or the **informal** word.

- The new government computer system is not expected to be fully **operational** until the end of the year.
- When I was a child, I used to love **building** tree houses.
- Tomorrow, I'm planning to spend the **whole** day on the beach.
- As part of their holiday, tourists will visit many important archaeological **sites**.
- By the time they'd **finished** their homework, it was time for bed.
- In the twelve months since its **inception**, the new tax system has raised £9 million.

Word Families**2. Complete these sentences with words derived from the words in brackets.**

- The **construction** (construct) of the dam involved the **destruction** (destroy) of many **historic** (history) buildings.
- The date for the **completion** (complete) of the dam project is 2009.
- The cost of the dam project has risen partly because the **builders** (build) have worked very slowly and partly because of **inefficiency** (inefficient).

P - 91

Grammar

Talking about processes (2)

1- Complete these sentences, choosing the correct modal verbs.

- Large areas of land (could / **had to**) be flooded when they were building the Three Gorges Dam.
- Work on the dam (**could** / must) not be started until the Yangtze had been diverted.
- The locks were built so that the Yangtze (**could** / had to) still be used by ships.
- Unfortunately many of the historical sites (**could** / might) not be saved when they built the dam.
- Protestors are demanding that people who had to leave their homes (could / **must**) be given new homes and compensation.

P – 92

Read and Analyse

2 You are going to read a report describing some important technological changes that have affected travel in Europe.

Recent developments in transport technology

Technological changes have affected many areas of life in recent years.

This report will focus on three changes that have affected travel in Europe.

Online booking

The cheapest and quickest way of buying train or airline tickets is now to book 'online'. This involves logging on to the Internet, finding the correct website, typing in your travel requirements and personal details and paying by credit card. Passengers can then print a receipt which may also be the 'ticket' which they show at the airport or railway station. This is all done automatically without the need for any personal contact with the airline or rail company.

حجز التذاكر عبر الإنترنت

إن أسرع وأرخص طريقة لشراء تذاكر القطار أو الطائرة هي الآن أن تحجز عبر الإنترنت. وهذا يتضمن دخول الإنترنت، إيجاد الموقع الصحيح، طباعة (كتابة) متطلبات سفرك و معلوماتك الشخصية و الدفع عن طريق بطاقة الائتمان. و يمكن للمسافرين بعد ذلك أن يطبعوا إيصالاً و الذي يمكن أن يستخدم كتذكرة يظهرونها في المطار أو محطة القطار. كل ذلك يتم بشكل أوتوماتيكي بدون الحاجة إلى تواصل شخصي مع شركة الخطوط الجوية أو الحديدية.

Eurotunnel

In 1994 a tunnel linking Britain with the mainland of Europe opened to the public. This complex and costly engineering project, which had been planned for many years, was paid for jointly by the French and British governments. Cars are carried on railway trucks which form a train called the Shuttle, and then drive off at the end of their 35-minute journey through the tunnel. In the past, the only alternative for motorists was a ferry, which took a minimum of 90 minutes.

النفق الأوروبي (يوروتنل)

في عام ١٩٩٤ تم افتتاح نفق يربط بريطانيا مع الأرض الرئيسية لأوروبا أمام العامة. هذا المشروع الهندسي المعقد و المكلف و الذي تم التخطيط له لسنوات عديدة دُفع له بشكل مشترك من قبل الحكومتين الفرنسية و الانكليزية. تُحمل السيارات على عربت حديدية تشكل قطاراً يسمى القطار المكوكي، ثم ينطلق مسرعاً حتى نهاية الرحلة عبر النفق و التي تبلغ ٣٥ دقيقة. في الماضي كان البديل الوحيد لسائقي السيارات هي عبارة تستغرق على الأقل ٩٠ دقيقة.

Electronic road tolls

Motorists have to pay to drive on motorways in Italy. Under the original system, all cars had to stop at kiosks at the beginning or the end of a section of motorway and pay cash. Now, there is a high-tech alternative called Telepass. Under this new system, cars are 'recognised' so they do not have to stop. The money is taken automatically from each driver's bank account. These are just three of the changes that have affected European travelling habits in recent years. In different ways, they are all dependent upon advanced technology

آلة الدفع الإلكترونية للطرق

يجب على سائقي السيارات أن يدفعوا على الطرقات في إيطاليا. بحسب النظام الأصلي توجب على كل السيارات أن تتوقف عند أكشاك في بداية أو نهاية قطاع (قسم) من الطريق و أن يدفعوا نقداً. حالياً يوجد بديل متطور يسمى العبور (البعيد) بدون توقف. بحسب هذا النظام الجديد يتم التعرف على السيارات لذلك لا يتوجب عليها أن تتوقف. يؤخذ المال بشكل تلقائي من الحساب المصرفي لكل سائق. هذه فقط ثلاثة من التغييرات التي أثرت في عادات السفر الأوربية في السنوات الأخيرة. بطرق مختلفة جميعها يعتمد على التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.

P – 93

Students' book p 93

Write a report describing some of the most important technological changes that have affected people's lives recently .

The advance of technology has made some great inventions. Smartphones and the Internet have revolutionized telecommunication, removing borders and effectively transforming the world into a global village. We are no longer using the traditional route of sharing information. Furthermore, we no more need to carry books if we don't want to. In short, new technologies have forever changed our lives. In the future, we may be able to use our computers inside our brains.

إن تطور التكنولوجيا قدّم بعض الاختراعات العظيمة. الهواتف الذكية و الانترنت شكلا ثورةً في عالم الاتصالات، أزالا الحدود و حولا العالم إلى قرية صغيرة. نحن لم نعد نستخدم الطريقة التقليدية في تشارك المعلومات. علاوةً على ذلك ، نحن لم نعد نحتاج أن نحمل الكتب إذا لم نرد ذلك. باختصار، التقنيات الجديدة غيرت حياتنا و للأبد. في المستقبل، ربما نكون قادرين على استخدام حواسيبنا داخل عقولنا .

Unit – 12
Geniuses

P- 94

1. Match each word with its correct meaning.

بطل	a champion	5 a person who wins a sporting competition
يظهر – يوضح	b demonstrate	6 to show or prove (something)
رقم – عدد	c digit	1 a number – 1, 2, 3, etc.
بارز – مميز	d outstanding	7 excellent / unusually good
موهبة	e talent	2 the natural ability to do something well
نظرية	f theory	4 a system of ideas to explain something
لقب - منزلة	g title	3 name showing a person's status

P – 95

READ

So talented, so young

A child prodigy is a person who has an outstanding talent or skill at a very early age. In this article you are going to read about three child prodigies with different talents or skills.

موهوبين جداً ، صغار جداً
الطفل العبقري (الناطقة - المعجزة) هو شخص ذو مهارة أو موهبة بارزة في سن مبكرة جداً . في هذه المقالة سوف نقرأ عن ثلاث أطفال عابرة في مهارات أو مواهب مختلفة.

A- Youngest master now doing research

At the age of twelve, Tathagat Avatar Tulsi was the world's youngest person to gain a Master's degree. He finished high school at the age of nine, gained a BSc at the age of ten and an MSc when he was only twelve. At eighteen, he is now a PhD student in Bangalore, India, doing high-level research. His amazing mathematical talent was noticed by his parents when he was only six.

A. أصغر أستاذ جامعي (مدرس يحمل شهادة ماجستير) يجري حالياً البحوث

في سن الثانية عشرة كان تاتاغات أفاتار أصغر شخص في العالم يحصل على شهادة الماجستير . أنهى الدراسة الثانوية في سن التاسعة و حصل على شهادة البكالوريوس في العلوم في سن العاشرة و حصل على الماجستير في العلوم عندما كان فقط في الثانية عشرة . و هو الآن في سن الثامنة عشرة طالب دكتوراه في بانغالور ، الهند و هو يقوم ببحوث عالية المستوى . لوحظت موهبته الرياضية المذهلة من قبل والديه عندما كان في السادسة فقط .

B- Playing to win

Magnus Carlsen from Norway is one of the best chess players in the world. He started playing chess with his father at the age of five and played his first tournament at the age of eight. In 2003, at the age of thirteen, he was awarded the title of Grandmaster. Chess became his passion and Magnus was allowed to take time off school to practise the game. He received coaching from Kasparov, one of the greatest chess players and geniuses of all time. At the age of nineteen he was ranked number one in the world, becoming the youngest player to be awarded this title.

B. اللعب من أجل الفوز

يعتبر ماغنوس كارلسون من النروج واحد من أفضل لاعبي الشطرنج في العالم . بدأ بلعب الشطرنج مع والده في سن الخامسة ، و لعب في أول بطولة له في سن الثامنة . في عام ٢٠٠٣ ، و هو في سن الثالثة عشرة تم منحه لقب المعلم الكبير . لقد أصبح الشطرنج شغفه . و كان مسموحاً لماغنوس بأخذ إجازة من المدرسة لممارسة اللعبة كما تلقى تدريباً خاصاً من كاسباروف أحد أعظم لاعبي و عابرة الشطرنج على الإطلاق . في سن التاسعة عشرة صُنّف رقم واحد في العالم ، و أصبح بذلك أصغر لاعب يُمنح هذا اللقب .

C- Public less interested as child grows up

Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart was one of the greatest musical geniuses of all time. He was born in Salzburg, Austria, in 1756 and began writing music before he was four years old. As a child prodigy he toured Europe, playing his own compositions on the violin and other instruments to astonished audiences which often included kings and queens. In common with many other child prodigies, Mozart lost some of his appeal to audiences when he became an adult. Despite his genius, he had to work hard throughout his short life to earn a living, and died very poor, at the age of thirty-five.

C. العامة تصبح أقل اهتماماً عندما يكبر الصغير

كان وولفغانغ أماديوس موزارت أحد أعظم عباقرة الموسيقى على الإطلاق . ولد في سالزبورغ في النمسا عام ١٧٥٦ و بدأ بكتابة الموسيقى قبل أن يصبح في الرابعة من عمره . عندما كان طفلاً عبقرياً جال في أوروبا ، و عزف مقطوعاته (مؤلفاته) الخاصة على الكمان و الآلات الأخرى للجماهير المذهولة و التي غالباً ما كانت تتضمن الملوك و الملكات . بشكل مشترك مع العديد من الأطفال العباقرة فإن موزارت قد خسر بعض سحره (جاذبيته) تجاه الجماهير عندما أصبح راشداً . و على الرغم من عبقريته ، كان عليه أن يعمل بجد خلال حياته القصيرة لكي يكسب عيشه و مات فقيراً جداً و هو في سن الخامسة و الثلاثين .

P – 96**Vocabulary****Nouns and Adjectives****1. Fill in the missing words derived from the words in brackets.**

- My sister is a very **able** student. (ability)
- To my **amazement** I got over 90% in the exam. (amazing)
- Many children find young animals very **appealing**. (appeal)
- When she said she was leaving, we just stared at her in **astonishment** . (astonished)
- I've never been very good at **mathematics**. (mathematical)
- I enjoy listening to all kinds of **music**. (musical)
- Sport has increased greatly in **popularity** in recent years. (popular)
- The more you practise, the more **skilful** you will become. (skill)

Prepositions**2. Read this short text about child prodigies.**

- Copy and complete the text using these prepositions:

at for in of on

Child prodigies are children who demonstrate talents (1) **at** a very young age. Mathematical geniuses are often able to do complicated calculations (2) **in** their heads (3) **in** just a few seconds. This is particularly remarkable when the numbers they are dealing with have been selected (4) **at** random.

Musical geniuses, like Mozart, are often able to learn to play new pieces of music (5) **on** a variety of instruments very quickly. Mozart was certainly the most talented composer of his time, but many people believe he was really a hard worker, not a genius. When he died (6) **in** 1791, some people said that overwork was the cause (7) **of** his death.

الأطفال العباقرة هم الأطفال الذين يظهرون مواهب في سن مبكرة (صغيرة) جداً . غالباً ما يكون عباقرة الرياضيات قادرين على إجراء حسابات معقدة في رؤوسهم (أدمغتهم) بثوان قليلة فقط . يكون ذلك جديراً بالملاحظة بشكل خاص عندما تكون الأرقام التي يتعاملون معها قد اختيرت بشكل عشوائي .

عباقرة الموسيقى مثل موزارت غالباً ما يكونون قادرين على عزف مقطوعات جديدة من الموسيقى على آلات متنوعة بسرعة كبيرة . لا شك أن موزارت كان أكثر المؤلفين الموسيقيين موهبةً في عصره (أكثرهم نبوغاً) . و لكن يعتقد الكثير من الناس أنه كان عاملاً مجتهداً (مجداً) جداً و ليس عبقرياً . عندما مات عام ١٧٩١ قال بعض الناس أن الإفراط في العمل (العمل الزائد) هو سبب موته .

P – 97

Grammar Adding information**1. Read sentences a-e, then answer questions A-C below.**

- a. He is now a PhD student in Bangalore, **doing** high-level research.
- b. He received coaching from Kasparov, **one** of the greatest chess players and geniuses of all time.
- c. At the age of nineteen he was ranked number one in the world, **becoming** the youngest player to be awarded this title.
- d. He began playing piano at the age of five **and** was immediately recognised for his immense talent and musical ability.
- e. As a child prodigy, he toured Europe, **playing** his own compositions on the violin.

- A. Which part of sentences a-e contains the most important information: the first or the second part? **the first part (applies to all)**
- B. What is the purpose of the other part of each sentence? **to add detail (applies to all)**
- C. Which word in each sentence links the two parts?
a doing b one c becoming d and e playing

2. Rewrite sentences 1a-e with these beginnings:

- a. He is now a PHD student in Bangalore where ...

He is now a PHD student in Bangalore where he is doing high-level research.

- b. He received coaching from Kasparov who **is one of the greatest chess players and geniuses of all time.**
- c. At the age of nineteen he was ranked number one in the world which **made him the youngest player to be awarded this title.**
- d. He began playing piano at the age of five. Immediately, **he was recognised for his immense talent.**
- e. As a child prodigy on tours of Europe, he **played his own compositions on the violin.**

3. Rewrite the following, using the -ing form of the verbs.

- a. At the age of seven, my brother Amar played football for a local club. When he did this, he became the youngest professional player in Syria.
- **At the age of seven, my brother Amar played football for a local club, becoming the youngest professional player in Syria.**
- b. A few years later, he joined the men's team and he scored three goals in his first match.
- A few years later, he joined the men's team, **scoring** three goals in his first match.
- c. At the end of his first season, he was the highest paid player in the team. He was earning as much as six players would earn.
- At the end of his first season, he was the highest paid player in the team, **earning** as much as six players would earn.
- d. Soon afterwards, a newspaper began printing stories which accused Amar of spending too much money on high living.
- Soon afterwards, a newspaper began printing stories **accusing** Amar of spending too much money on high living.
- e. Amar denied these accusations. He explained that he spent his money on his family and that he gave much of it to charity.
- Amar denied these accusations, **explaining** that he spent his money on his family and that he gave much of it to charity.
- f. He continued to play for his team, trusted in the support of his family and refused to let the newspaper stories bother him.
- He continued to play for his team, **trusting** in the support of his family and **refusing** to let the newspaper stories bother him.

P - 99

WRITING

Genius Award Application

Genius Society members,

I am writing to you to suggest that you consider Dr Mohammad Imad Droubi for your new Genius award. Dr Droubi is an incredibly gifted dentist and academic, who gives lectures to audiences all over the world. He is best known for inventing a replacement metal jaw, improving the quality of life of those with serious dental problems. His innovations in the field of dentistry have brought him international recognition. He has received numerous awards from international institutions including first place at the Arab World Inventors conference in 2009. I believe that these accolades justify his nomination for the new Genius Award.

Yours faithfully,

Waleed Yousef

طلب جائزة عبقرية

السادة أعضاء جمعية العبقرية

أنا أكتب لكم لتأخذوا بعين الاعتبار الدكتور محمد عماد دروبي من أجل جائزة العبقرية خاصتكم . إن الدكتور دروبي طبيب أسنان و أكاديمي موهوب يعطي (يقدم) محاضرات الجماهير (الحضور) في كل أنحاء العالم . و هو مشهور جداً لاختراعه الفك المعدني التعويضي محسناً بذلك نوعية (جودة) الحياة لأولئك الذين يعانون من مشاكل أسنان خطيرة . إن اختراعاته في مجال طب الأسنان قدمت له شهرةً (تقدير - اهتمام) عالمية. لقد تلقى جوائز عديدة من معاهد عالمية بما في ذلك المكان الأول في مؤتمر المخترعين العرب عام ٢٠٠٩ . أن أعتقد أن هذه التكريمات تبرر ترشيحه لجائزة العبقرية الجديدة . و تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام
وليد يوسف

Page 99 students' book

You are going to write a letter recommending a genius for an award

Genius Award Application

I would recommend Dina Katabi for your award. Dina currently holds the title of professor in the Department of Electrical Engineering in MIT. She has developed a way to remotely measure small movements by transmitting a low energy radio wave and listening for signals that bounces back. She aims to help relieve parents' fear of cot death. I believe she deserves this award because of her outstanding achievement. In fact, She's received the MacArthur fellow in 2016.

سوف أوصي بالبروفيسورة دينا خطابي لجائزتك. تحمل دينا حالياً منصب بروفيسورة في قسم الهندسة الكهربائية و علوم الكمبيوتر في معهد ماساتشوستس التقني. لقد طورت طريقة للقياس عن بعد حركات صغيرة جداً مثل عملية أخذ نفس و ذلك يبيث موجات راديو منخفضة جداً و الاستماع للإشارات التي ترتد . تهدف خطابي لأن تساعد في إراحة خوف الآباء من الموت المفاجئ للأطفال . أنا أعتقد أنها تستحق هذه الجائزة بسبب إنجازها البارز. في الواقع، هي تلقت جوائز عديدة من مؤسسات عالمية بما فيها زمالة ماك آرثر عام ٢٠١٦ .

Review 4, units 10-12
Grammar and Vocabulary

P - 100

1. Choose the best verbs in these sentences. Sometimes both are possible.

<p>a. The Channel Tunnel, which links Britain and France, is over 50 kilometres long and (was completed / was being completed) in 1994. There are actually two main tunnels, one from France to Britain and the other from Britain to France.</p> <p>b. Previous plans to build a tunnel (had been rejected / have been rejected) because of the high cost and because the people were worried about fires in the tunnel.</p> <p>c. To reduce people's worries about safety, a third tunnel (had to be built / had to build) as an escape tunnel in case of fire.</p> <p>d. For many years motorists (had looked forward / had been looking forward) to driving between Britain and the mainland of Europe.</p> <p>e. However, they (had not thought / had not been thinking) they would have to put their cars on trains to 'drive' through the tunnel.</p>	<p>a. يبلغ طول نفق القناة الذي يربط فرنسا مع بريطانيا أكثر من خمسين كيلومتراً و تم الانتهاء من بناءه عام ١٩٩٤. في الواقع يوجد نفقان رئيسيان، واحد من فرنسا إلى بريطانيا و الثاني من بريطانيا لفرنسا .</p> <p>b. لقد تم رفض (رُفضت) خطط سابقة لبناء نفق بسبب الكلفة العالية و لأن الناس كانوا قلقين من (حدوث) الحرائق في النفق .</p> <p>c. لتخفيض قلق الناس حيال السلامة ، كان لا بد من بناء نفق ثالث كنفق نجاة في حال حدوث حريق .</p> <p>d. طوال سنين عديدة تطلع / كان سائقو السيارات يتطلعون للقيادة بين بريطانيا و الأرض الرئيسية لأوروبا .</p> <p>e. على كل حال هم لم يظنوا أنه سيتوجب عليهم أن يضعوا سياراتهم على متن القطارات ليأخذها عبر النفق .</p>
--	--

P – 100

2. Copy and complete these sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**Choose the best tense, and decide whether to use the active or the passive form.**

<p>a. Burj Al-Arab, which is one of the most expensive hotels in the world, stands in the sea off the coast of Dubai. Before it (1) could be built (could / build), engineers (2) had to make (have to / make) an artificial island. In order to do this, land (3) had to be reclaimed (have to / reclaim) from the sea.</p>	<p>إن برج العرب و الذي يعتبر واحداً من أعلى فنادق العالم يقف في البحر قبالة ساحل دبي .قبل أن يكون بالإمكان بناءه ، توجب على المهندسين بناء جزيرة صناعية . لكي يقوموا بذلك كان لا بد من استعادة التربة من البحر .</p>
<p>b. The Panama Canal, which (1) joins (join) the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, opened to shipping in 1914. Before this, ships (2) had to go round (have to / go round) the bottom of South America to get from one ocean to the other. This was one of the greatest and most difficult engineering jobs that (3) had ever been attempted (ever / attempt). 5,600 workers died between 1904 and 1914 while the canal (4) was being constructed (construct). There had been an earlier attempt to build a canal in 1880 but it (5) could not be finished (could / not finish) because so many construction workers died of disease.</p>	<p>افتتحت قناة بنما التي تربط المحيط الأطلسي و الهادئ للشحن عام ١٩١٤ . قبل ذلك ، توجب على السفن أن تدور حول أسفل أمريكا الجنوبية لكي يعبروا من محيط إلى آخر . كان ذلك أحد أعظم و أصعب الأعمال الهندسية التي تمت المحاولة عليها على الإطلاق . مات ٥٦٠٠ عامل بين عامي ١٩٠٤ و ١٩١٤ بينما كانت القناة تُشيد . لقد كان هناك محاولة سابقة (قبل ذلك) لبناء قناة عام ١٨٨٠ و لكن لم يكن بالإمكان إنهاءها لأن عدداً كبير جداً من عمال البناء ماتوا بسبب المرض .</p>

Ibrahim Chanam**3. Rewrite the following as single sentences, using a verb in the -ing form.**

a. In his first marathon Hani did very well. He finished in 20th place.

In his first marathon Hani did very well, finishing in 20th place.

b. He took three hours to complete the race. When he finished the race, he broke his own previous record by six minutes.

He took three hours to complete the race, breaking his own previous record by six minutes.

c. Before the event, he had trained hard and often ran for five hours a day.

Before the event, he had trained hard often running for five hours a day.

d. Hani is a postgraduate student at the University of Damascus who is studying law.

Hani is a postgraduate student at the University of Damascus, studying law.

e. Hani agreed to run the marathon in December. He told his friends he wanted to collect money for a children's charity.

Hani agreed to run the marathon in December, telling his friends he wanted to collect money for a children's charity.

f. Hani succeeded in doing this. He collected over SYP 200,000.

Hani succeeded in doing this, collecting over SYP 200,000.

P – 101

4. Choose the correct form of words from the lists to complete these texts. (There is one word in each list that you do not need to use.)**A aspiring exceptional exhaustion support prestigious rivals**

Ahmad had competed in six (1) **prestigious** cycling competitions before, but this was the first time he had dominated the race. When he crossed the finish line beating all his (2) **rivals**, he knew it was the start of an (3) **exceptional** career. Whenever he participated, Ahmad risked injury and (4) **exhaustion**, but his competitive nature helped him to succeed. He is an example to (5) **aspiring** cyclists around the world.

كان أحمد قد اشترك في ستة سباقات دراجات مرموقة سابقاً و لكن كانت تلك أول مرة يسيطر (يهيمن) فيها على السباق. عندما عبر خط النهاية و هزم (هازماً) كل منافسيه، عرف أن ذلك كان بداية مسيرة رياضية استثنائية. في كل مرة شارك فيها خاطر أحمد بالإصابة و الإنهاك لكن طبيعته التنافسية ساعدته في الفوز. إنه مثال للدراجين التواقين (الطموحين) حول العالم.

B astonished outstanding popular talent theory

My younger sister has always had a (1) **talent** for music. She started piano lessons at the age of three and her teacher was (2) **astonished** by how quickly she learned to play well. "She is the most (3) **outstanding** pupil I have ever taught," she said. "As well as playing the piano brilliantly she also understands the (4) **theory** of music."

لطالما كان لدى أختي الصغيرة موهبة للموسيقى. بدأت بدروس البيانو في سن السادسة و كانت معلمتها مذهولةً بمدى السرعة التي تعلمت فيها العزف بشكل جيد "إنها من ألمع الطلاب الذين علمتهم على الإطلاق" هي قالت "كما أنها (بالإضافة) إلى أنها تعزف على البيانو بشكل مذهل و تفهم أيضاً نظرية الموسيقى".

5. Complete these sentences with a word derived from the word in brackets.

a. My father is one of the most **skillful** drivers I know. (skill)

b. Traditional music has lost some of its **popularity** among young people. (popular)

c. Samer was a very **talented** jazz trumpet player. (talent)

d. He has an amazing **ability** to multiply large numbers in his head. (able)

e. Wherever I go on holiday I like to visit places of **historical** interest. (history)

f. I'd like to be an **archaeologist** when I leave university. (archaeology)

6. Choose the correct word or phrase in these sentences.

- The price of DVD players **came down** / *came round* by 50% last year.
- If you are good at mental arithmetic, it means you can do calculations **in your head** / *on your head* very quickly.
- After the storm there were a lot of **afraid** / **frightened** children and animals.
- I've lost my glasses – let me know if you **come across** / *come over* them.
- Over a thousand people sent in correct answers to the competition. A computer picked the names of the three winners **at random** / *from random*.
- My sister and I look very **alike** / *alive* – people often think I'm her.

P – 102 - 2

A balloon debate is a debate in which several speakers attempt to win the support of an audience. The audience has to imagine that the speakers are flying in a hot-air balloon which is slowly sinking. Unless someone is thrown out of the balloon, the balloon will hit the ground and no one will survive. Each speaker has to persuade the audience by explaining why they should not be thrown out of the balloon. Usually each speaker takes the part of a famous person, or a profession.

The island of Literock has been almost destroyed by a hurricane. The islanders have lost their homes and all their possessions. Nobody has been killed, but many people have slight injuries. A group of four professional people have been invited to help the islanders rebuild their community. These people are: a teacher, a doctor, an engineer and an economist. The only way of getting to Literock is by balloon. Half-way to the island, the balloon starts to lose height. Only one person will be able to reach the island, so the others will have to jump into the sea. (Fortunately they are all strong swimmers.)

جدل (مناظرة-نقاش) المنطاد هو جدل يحاول فيه عدة متحدثين أن يفوزوا (يحظوا) بدعم جمهور ما. يجب على الحضور أن يتخيلوا أن المتحدثين يحلقون بمنطاد هواء ساخن يهبط ببطء. ما لم يتم رمي أحدهم من المنطاد، فإن المنطاد سيضرب الأرض ولن ينجو أحد. على كل متحدث أن يقنع الحضور (المستمعين) لماذا لا يجب أن يتم رميه من المنطاد. عادة كل متحدث يأخذ دور شخص مشهور أو اختصاص ما.

جزيرة ليتروك دُمرت تقريباً بإعصار . لقد خسر سكان الجزيرة منازلهم و كل ممتلكاتهم . لم يقتل أحد لكن أصيب العديد من الناس إصابات طفيفة. تمت دعوة مجموعة من أربعة أشخاص محترفين لمساعدة سكان الجزيرة في إعادة إعمار مجتمعهم. هؤلاء الناس هم مدرس، طبيب، مهندس و اقتصادي. الطريقة الوحيدة للوصول إلى الجزيرة هي بالمنطاد. عند منتصف الطريق إلى الجزيرة يبدأ المنطاد بفقدان الارتفاع. شخص واحد سيكون قادر على الوصول إلى الجزيرة، لذلك سيتوجب على الآخرين القفز إلى البحر. (لحسن الحظ جميعهم سباحون جيّدون).

A large passenger ship 50 kilometres out to sea is in trouble and radioed for help. The passengers are not in any immediate danger, but some are sea-sick and many of them are very angry. The sea is rough and the weather is too bad to use a helicopter. A small boat with four specialists is travelling towards the damaged ship. The specialists are a diver who is also a marine engineer, a doctor, a representative of the shipping company and a police officer. Unfortunately the boat hits a rock and starts to sink. Only one of the specialists will be able to reach the ship before the boat sinks, so three of them will have to get out of the boat and swim back to land.

سفينة ركاب كبيرة على بعد خمسين كيلومتر في البحر في مشكلة و اتصلت باللاسلكي من أجل المساعدة . الركاب ليسوا عرضة لخطر مباشر و لكن بعضهم مصاب بدوار البحر و العديد منهم غاضب جداً. البحر هائج و الطقس سيء جداً لاستخدام طوافة. سافر قارب صغير على متنه أربع أخصائيين باتجاه السفينة المعطوبة. الأخصائيون هم غطاس و هو أيضاً بحار، مهندس، طبيب و ممثل عن شركة الشحن و ضابط شرطة. لسوء الحظ يصطدم القارب بصخرة و يبدأ بالغرق. فقط واحد من الأخصائيين سيكون قادراً على الوصول إلى السفينة قبل أن يغرق القارب، لذلك سيكون على ثلاثة منهم أن يخرجوا من القارب و أن يسبحوا عائدين إلى اليابسة.

المدرس: ابراهيم أحمد غنم

كامل كتاب الأنشطة مع التمارين المحلولة و المواضيع كاملة



Ibrahim Ahmad Ghanam

Activity Book

The law

P – 4 Reading

1. Read the *International rules of law* text below and answer the following questions.

a- How does the Geneva Convention help the victims of war?

- It protects injured soldiers and civilians; it provides aid such as food and medical help.

b- What is forbidden under the rules of the Geneva Convention?

- It is illegal to attack civilians and to fight someone who is already injured.

c- What is the Red Crescent?

- An organisation that provides medical aid during war and peacetime.

International rules of law

The Geneva Convention is a set of international laws that protect injured soldiers and civilians during war. The law makes sure that every person is treated well and with respect. The first treaty was written in 1864 but it is often changed due to different types of war. It was significantly updated in 1949 after World War Two. Syria is one of 200 countries in the world that agrees to follow the laws of the Geneva Convention. The agreement is important because during war a country might need help from neutral organisations to care for the wounded. The Red Crescent is one of the organisations that provides aid during times of war. It also helps injured people during peacetime, and you may have seen ambulances with the Red Crescent symbol in the street. Countries who follow the laws of the Geneva Convention must not attack civilians, and they are not allowed to fight someone who is already hurt. It is illegal to ignore these rules, and a country found guilty of committing war crimes will be tried in a court of law and can be severely punished. All soldiers, civilians and prisoners may receive medical help from doctors and nurses. They can be taken to a hospital without being attacked. Food can also be given to people involved in a conflict. Under the Geneva Convention it does not matter what religion, gender or nationality a person is or what his political views are; if someone is sick he must be treated without prejudice.

قواعد القانون الدولي

اتفاقية (معاهدة) جنيف هي مجموعة من القوانين الدولية التي تحمي الجنود المصابين و المدنيين خلال الحرب. يضمن القانون أن يُعامل كل شخص بشكل جيد و باحترام. كتبت المعاهدة الأولى عام ١٨٦٤ ولكنها غالباً ما عُدلت بسبب الأنواع المختلفة للحروب. لقد تم تعديلها بشكل هام (كبير) عام ١٩٤٩ بعد الحرب العالمية الثانية. إن سوريا واحدة من بين ٢٠٠ بلد (في) حول العالم توافق على تطبيق قوانين معاهدة جنيف. هذه الاتفاقية هامة لأنه خلال الحرب قد يحتاج البلد إلى مساعدة من منظمات حيادية لتهتم بالجرحى. الهلال الأحمر هي واحدة من هذه المنظمات التي توفر المساعدة في أوقات الحروب. كما تساعد أيضاً المصابين في أوقات السلم، و لعلك رأيت سيارات إسعاف عليها رمز الهلال الأحمر في الشوارع. البلدان التي تطبق قوانين معاهدة جنيف يجب ألا تهاجم المدنيين، و من غير المسموح لها محاربة شخص مصاب من قبل. من غير الشرعي تجاهل هذه القواعد (القوانين). و إن تبين أن بلد ما مذنب بارتكاب جرائم حرب فسوف يحاكم في محكمة و يمكن أن يعاقب بشدة. يُمكن لكل الجنود، المدنيين و السجناء أن يحصلوا على مساعدة طبية من الأطباء و الممرضات. يمكن أن يؤخذوا إلى المشفى بدون أن تتم مهاجمتهم. و يمكن أن يقدم الطعام للناس المتورطين في صراع. بموجب اتفاقية جنيف لا يهم ما هو دين، جنس أو جنسية الشخص أو ما هي توجهاته السياسية، إذا كان شخص ما مريض يجب أن يتم علاجه بدون تمييز (تحامل - إجحاف).

2. Read the article again and match each beginning a-f with one of the endings 1-6.

دولي - عالمي	a international	3 used by a number of different countries
تميز - تحامل	b prejudice	6 negative attitude towards people who are different
اتفاقية	c treaty	5 a formal agreement
بشدة	d severely	1 very harshly
مدنيين	e civilians	2 people not in the army
مساعدة	f aid	4 help

Ibrahim Ghanam

3. Read the article again. Are these sentences True or False?

- a. The treaty was written in 1949. **F : the first treaty was written in 1864**
- b. Around 200 countries, including Syria, have now signed the Geneva Convention. **T**
- c. Countries that ignore the terms of the treaty are punished. **T**
- d. If you are an injured soldier you will **not** be given aid. **F**

VOCABULARY

1- Match each of the words a-d with TWO of the meanings 1-8.

a case	5 noun – a container for carrying luggage or papers
	2 noun – the subject of a police investigation
b court	4 noun – a place where people play tennis or squash
	8 noun – the place where a trial is held
c fine	1 noun – money paid as a punishment
	7 adjective – high quality, good, e.g. weather
d mean	3 verb – to signify
	6 adjective – unkind / not generous

2- Use one of the words in 1 a-d twice in each of these sentences.

- a The judge in charge of the **case** carried all his documents in a black leather **case** .
- b The **court** heard that the crime had taken place on a tennis **court** .
- c The **fine** weather made me feel happy, but my mood changed when the police officer gave me a **fine** for driving too fast.
- d A What does this word **mean** ?
B Mean is the opposite of generous.

P- 6 Grammar linking the past with the present

- 1- Look at these illustrations a-f. What has just happened? What have these people been doing? Write two sentences for each illustration using the phrases given.**

a. come out of the sea / swim with his friends	a. He's just come out of the sea. He's been swimming with his friends.
b. go shopping / buy food for her family	b. She's just been shopping. She's been buying food for her family.
c. come out of the library / do research for a school project	c. She's just come out of the library. She's been doing research for a school project.
d. come off the football pitch / play football	d. He's just come off the football pitch. He's been playing football.
e. have family meal / celebrate Samer's graduation	e. They've just had a family meal. They've been celebrating Samer's graduation.
f. finish work / work since 8 o'clock this morning	f. They've just finished work. They've been working since 8 o'clock this morning.

2- Choose the correct verb form to complete these conversations. You may choose both.

- a**
A What have you (*done / **been doing***) since I last saw you?
B I've (***passed** / been passing*) my driving test and I've (***had** / **been having***) interviews for a university place.
 - b**
A Have you ever (*learnt to play / **been learning to play***) a musical instrument?
B Yes, I've (***started** / been starting*) learning the mizmar, but I've only (*played / **been playing***) for a few weeks.
 - c**
A Have you (***had** / been having*) a holiday yet this year?
B Yes, we've just (***come back** / been coming back*) from Lattakia.
- P : 7

Expressing opinion

التعبير عن رأي بمقالة ما

1. Read this student's essay and put the four paragraphs in the correct order.

d. Today, more and more people in Syria are using computers for activities at home, at school or at work. Such is the demand that the government launched a scheme to allow Syrians to purchase them more easily. Many people are using computers for all sorts of things – writing letters, searching the Internet or just playing games. It is a great thing that Syria has embraced modern technology so successfully, but in this essay I am going to consider two disadvantages of computers

d حالياً أعداد متزايدة من الناس في سوريا يستخدمون الحواسيب لنشاطات في المنزل، في المدرسة أو في العمل. لهذه الحاجة (بسبب ذلك) أطلقت الحكومة خطة للسماح للسوريين بشرائها بسهولة أكبر. العديد من الناس يستخدمون الحواسيب لكل أنواع الأشياء - كتابة الرسائل، البحث في الانترنت أو فقط للعب الألعاب. إنه لشيء رائع أن سوريا اعتنقت التكنولوجيا الحديثة بنجاح كبير كهذا، و لكن في هذه المقالة سوف أخذ بعين الاعتبار اثنتين من مساوئ الكمبيوتر.

b. In my opinion, the main disadvantage is that people may spend so much time on their computers that they see less of their friends and family. Children who spend too long playing computer games may become unsociable and forget how to communicate normally with other people.

b برأيي إحدى المساوئ الرئيسية هي أن الناس قد يمضون وقتاً طويلاً جداً على كمبيوتراتهم و هم بذلك يرون أصدقائهم و عائلاتهم أقل . و الأطفال الذين يمضون وقتاً طويلاً جداً في لعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر قد يصبحون غير اجتماعيين و ينسون كيف يتواصلوا بشكل طبيعي مع الناس الآخرين.

a. Another result of people spending too much time at their computers is that their health suffers. Sitting for long periods of time can hurt your eyes, cause headaches, or damage your hands and arms. In some cases this means that people cannot do their jobs properly.

a نتيجة أخرى لإمضاء الناس وقتاً طويلاً على كمبيوتراتهم هي أن صحتهم تتدهور فالجلوس لفترات طويلة يمكن أن يؤدي عينيك ، بسبب الصداع أو يؤدي يديك و ذراعيك . و في بعض الحالات يعني (يؤدي إلى) أن الناس لا يستطيعون أن يقوموا بوظائفهم بشكل صحيح.

c. There is no doubt that computers are here to stay. Some jobs and many leisure activities would be impossible without them, but we should be aware of the possible dangers of spending too much time at our computers.

c لا شك أن الحواسيب وُجدت لكي تبقى فالعديد من الوظائف و نشاطات التسلية ستكون مستحيلة بدونها ، و لكن يجب أن نكون مدركين للمخاطر المحتملة المرتبطة بإمضاء وقت طويل على حواسيبنا.

Ibrahim Ghanam

Activity book – p 7

Write a composition on the advantages and disadvantages of computers .

Computers are vital today and many people have one. In this article I will consider the advantages and disadvantages of computers: computers help us to make paperless office and this is good for the environment. In the paperless office, the storage space would be minimal. Besides, laptop computers allow people to work anywhere. However, the risks are unavoidable, such as eye strain, neck or back strain and fitness problems. Besides, people who spend too much time on computers may become unsociable. I believe we should use computers moderately.

الحواسيب (حيوية) هامة هذه الأيام و العديد من الناس يمتلكون واحداً. في هذه المقالة سوف أخذ بعين الاعتبار مزايا و مساوئ الحواسيب: إن الحواسيب تساعدنا في جعل المكاتب بلا ورق. و هذا جيد بالنسبة للبيئة. في المكتب عديم الورق، مساحة التخزين ستكون في حدّها الأدنى. بالإضافة إلى ذلك فإن الحواسيب المحمولة تسمح للناس بالعمل من أي مكان. على كل حال، فإن المخاطر حتمية (لا يمكن تجنبها) مثل إجهاد العين، آلام العنق و الظهر و مشاكل في اللياقة. بالإضافة لذلك فإن الناس الذين يقضون الكثير من الوقت على حواسيبهم قد يصبحون غير اجتماعيين. أنا أعتقد انه يجب علينا أن نستخدم الحواسيب باعتدال .

Activity book- page 8**Do you think companies should allow their employees to use work computers for their own purposes ?**

Nowadays most businesses use computers in their offices. But employees sometimes tend to use them for their own personal purposes like chatting with friends, playing games or even for viewing inappropriate content and other kinds of misuse. If they do so, employees may not be able to focus on what they are doing or even make big mistakes. In my opinion, companies need to secure their information systems and they should make strict rules to prevent this.

هذه الأيام معظم الشركات تستخدم الحواسيب في مكاتبها. و لكن الموظفين أحيانا يميلون لأن يستخدموها لأغراضهم الشخصية الخاصة مثل الدردشة مع الأصدقاء، لعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر أو حتى من أجل عرض محتوى غير مناسب و أنواع أخرى من إساءة الاستخدام. إذا قاموا بذلك، فإن الموظفين قد لا يكونون قادرين على التركيز على ما يعملونه أو حتى يرتكبوا أخطاء كبيرة. برأيي، تحتاج الشركات أن تحمي أنظمة معلوماتها و يجب عليهم أن يضعوا قوانين صارمة لمنع هذا.

UNIT – 2 Migration

P – 9 MODULE 1 : World issues

Reading

1- To migrate?

The correct definition is: travel to live in a warmer place.

(move somewhere to find work refers to people who migrate from one country to another; sleep during the winter is a definition of the verb to hibernate.)

2- Read the article and answer these questions.

- a. Why do animals migrate? Why do others not migrate?
 - **Animals migrate to find food / to raise their young. Others do not migrate because they don't have the same needs.**
- b. Why do some animals migrate northwards in summer and southwards in winter?
 - **The days are longer in the north in the summer – so food is more available. In the south it is warmer than in the North's winter month.**
- c. Do all animals make the same number of migrations every year?
 - **Some animals migrate every year, doing the two journeys in one year, but others migrate only if they need to find food or for more temperate weather.**

Animal Migration

When we talk about animal migration we mean the movement of an animal from the place where it has been living to a different place and the return journey to that animal's original home. Most animal migrations are recurrent events which happen at certain times of the year. Animals usually migrate to find food or to raise their young.

Incredibly, most migrating animals follow the same route every year and from generation to generation. Land animals may cross mountains or forge through rivers, while birds and insects travel extensive distances, sometimes across continents and oceans. Fish and other sea creatures may migrate halfway round the world. For example, the grey whale can travel as much as 20,000 kilometres.

Many animals migrate to northern regions during the northern summer because the long summer days mean that there is always plenty of food. In the autumn, when the weather gets colder, many animals migrate south to find food and warmer weather (the southern summer). Some animals migrate every year, doing the two journeys in one year, but others migrate only if they need to find food or for more temperate weather.

هجرة الحيوانات

عندما نتحدث عن هجرة الحيوانات فإننا نقصد انتقال حيوان ما من المكان الذي كان يعيش فيه إلى مكان آخر و كذلك رحلة العودة لذلك الحيوان إلى موطنه الأصلي. معظم هجرات الحيوانات هي أحداث متعاقبة (متكررة) تحدث في أوقات محددة في العام. تهاجر الحيوانات عادةً لكي تجد الطعام أو لتربي صغارها.

بشكل لا يصدق، فإن معظم الحيوانات المهاجرة تتبع نفس الطريق كل عام و من جيل إلى جيل. قد تعبر الحيوانات البرية الجبال أو تشق طريقها عبر الأنهار ، بينما تقطع الطيور و الحشرات مسافات شاسعة ، أحياناً عبر القارات و المحيطات . و قد تقطع الأسماك و المخلوقات البحرية نصف الطريق حول العالم، فالحوت الرمادي يمكن أن يقطع مسافة ٢٠ ألف كيلومتر. يُهاجر العديد من الحيوانات إلى المناطق الشمالية خلال الصيف الشمالي لأن أيام الصيف الطويلة تعني أنه يوجد دائماً وفرة من الطعام . في الخريف عندما يبرد الطقس ، تسافر العديد من الحيوانات جنوباً لكي تجد الطعام و من أجل الطقس الأكثر دفئاً (الصيف الجنوبي). بعض الحيوانات تهاجر كل عام و تقوم بالرحلتين في عام واحد، و هناك حيوانات أخرى تهاجر فقط إذا احتاجت أن تجد الطعام أو من أجل طقس أكثر اعتدالاً (دافئاً) .

3- Read the article again. Are these statements True or False?

a. Animal migration always involves returning the same season.

False: can be different seasons

b. Most animals migrate to escape from their enemies.

False: to find food and raise their young

c. Many animals migrate at the same time every year.

True

d. Animals make the same journeys as their ‘mothers’ and ‘fathers’ did.

True

e. Many animals migrate south in the summer.

False: to the north

f. Finding food is rarely the main reason for a migration.

False: one of the main reasons

4- Match these words and phrases from the article with their meanings.

a- temperate	5 having mild temperatures
b- raise	6 bring up children
c- creature	7 a living thing / animal
d- extensive	3 very long
e- original	1 first
f- recurrent	4 occurring often or repeatedly
g- forge	2 advance steadily

Vocabulary**1- Answer these interview questions in words, using the information in brackets.**

<i>How many students are there in your class? (25)</i>	<i>There are twenty-five students in my class.</i>
a- When was your school opened? (1975)	It was opened in nineteen seventy-five.
b- What's the address of the school? (17, 10th Avenue)	The address is seventeen, Tenth Avenue.
c- How many students go to your school? (about 1,750)	About one thousand seven hundred and fifty students go to my school.

2- Rewrite the underlined phrases in these sentences as numbers.

Example: My brother was born in two thousand and four. 2004

a- I scored seventy-six percent in my English exam. 76%

b- There were two world wars in the twentieth century. 20th

c- The population of Egypt is about seventy-five million. 75,000,000

d- There are a hundred centimes in one Algerian dinar. 100

3- Choose the correct words to complete these sentences.

a- Some human activities are (destroying / destruction) the natural world.

b- Unemployment is falling as more people find (permanent / permanently) work.

c- Average (earn / earnings) are expected to double in the next ten years.

d- It has been a (disaster / disastrous) year for the tea industry.

e- Storms caused the (destroyed / destruction) of most of the crops.

1. Complete this story of a family who left England to live in Syria. Use the past simple or past perfect form of the verbs between parentheses. (Write two forms if they are both possible.)

In 1975 my family **left** (1) (leave) England on an aeroplane. Five hours later we (2) **arrived** (arrive) in Damascus, Syria. My mother (3) **had been / was** (be) worried about the plane journey because she is scared of flying. But there (4) **was** (be) no turbulence and she (5) **slept** (sleep) through the trip.

In Syria my family (6) **lived** (live) in a lovely apartment, which was (7) **provided** (provide) by my father's new job. My father helped to run an engineering firm that (8) **built** (build) bridges. We (9) **went** (go) to an international school and (10) **attended** (attend) school with children from all over the world. At first, it (11) **was** (be) difficult getting used to being away from home, but we all (12) **worked** (work) hard to fit in and the locals (13) **were** (be) very friendly. In 1986, my family and I (14) **returned** (return) to England, but I (15) **loved / had loved** (love) my time in Syria. I (16) **had learnt** (learn) so much about an interesting culture and (17) **had made** (make) so many good friends.

في عام ١٩٧٥ غادرت عائلتي انكلترا على متن طائرة . بعد خمس ساعات وصلنا مدينة دمشق في سوريا . كانت والدتي قلقة من رحلة الطائرة لأنها تخشى الطيران . و لكن لم يكن هناك مطبات هوائية فنامت خلال الرحلة . في سوريا عاشت عائلتي في شقة جميلة قدمها (مقدمة من) عمل والدي الجديد . لقد ساعد والدي في إدارة شركة هندسية بنت الجسور . ذهبنا إلى مدرسة دولية (عالمية) و داومنا في المدرسة مع أطفال من كل أنحاء العالم . في البداية كان الاعتياد على الغربية صعباً و لكننا جميعاً عملنا بجد لتناقل و كان الناس المحليون ودودين جداً . في عام ١٩٨٦ عدنا أنا و عائلتي إلى انكلترا ، و لكنني كنت قد أحببت وقتي في سوريا . لقد تعلمت الكثير عن ثقافة ممتعة وكونت العديد من الصداقات الجيدة (الأصدقاء الجيدين) .

2. Match a sentence from List A with another from List B, then complete the sentences with two verbs – one in the past simple and the other in the past perfect.

List A	List B
a- I went (go) to the doctor's this morning.	I had felt ill during the night. (5)
b- I had dreamt (dream) of visiting China for many years.	Last year I spent (spend) two months there.(6)
c- My sister and her husband moved (move) into a new flat at the weekend.	Before that they had lived (live) with her husband's parents.(1)
d- My father retired (retire) last year.	He had worked (work) for the same company all his life. (3)
e- I wasn't surprised that he fell (fall) asleep at the wheel of his car.	He had driven (drive) nearly 1,000 kilometres without a break. (2)
f- He had looked (look for) work for only two weeks.	Then yesterday he was offered (be offered) two jobs. (4)

Describing a sequence of events in the past

1. Read this student's essay and put the sentences in the correct order.**A night to remember**

C I had gone to bed just after midnight and I was only half-asleep when the wind started blowing.

A Ten minutes later my bedroom window shattered with a terrible crash.

B Immediately, I leapt out of bed and rushed to my brothers' bedroom to check that Tareq and Hani were all right.

I When I went into their bedroom, I found Tareq staring out of the window watching the storm.

G Our younger brother Hani was still sleeping peacefully.

D Luckily, he had not been woken by the noise of the wind and rain.

E Next, Tareq and I went to check that our parents were okay. We knocked on their bedroom door.

H There was no reply, so we opened the door and went in. I When I went into their bedroom, I found Tareq staring out of the window watching the storm

F Our mother was still sleeping, but our father was already dressed and doing everything he could to protect our house from the storm.

ليلة لا تنسى (أتذكرها)

C كنت قد ذهبت للنوم بعد منتصف الليل (تماماً) و كنت شبه (نصف) نائم عندما بدأت الرياح بالهبوب (تهب).

A بعد عشر دقائق انغلقت (ارتطمت) نافذة غرفة نومي مصدرةً صوتاً فظيماً .

B نهضت (قفزت) فوراً من سريري و اندفعت إلى غرفة أخويّ لأتأكد من أن طارق و هاني بخير (على ما يرام) .

I عندما دخلت غرفتهما ، وجدت طارقاً يحدق من النافذة و هو يشاهد العاصفة .

G كان أخينا الأصغر هاني لا يزال نائماً بسلام .

D لحسن الحظ لم يوقظه ضجيج الرياح و الأمطار .

E بعد ذلك ذهبت أنا و طارق لتتأكد أن والدينا كانا بخير . قرعنا على الباب .

H لم يكن هناك جواب لذلك فتحنا الباب و دخلنا .

F كانت والدتنا لا تزال نائمة و لكن والدنا كان مرتدياً ملابسه و يقوم بكل شيء يستطيعه لحماية منزلنا من العاصفة .

Activity book-page 13

Write about something that actually happened to you or use your imagination to make up a story .

I'll never forget the holiday I spent by the sea last summer. First, my friends and I hired a pedal boat. We sailed a few kilometers. Then a sudden wave hit the boat and turned it over. We were absolutely terrified. The first thing that struck me was that my friend was not a good swimmer. I remember how we tried to calm each other. With great difficulty we managed to swim to the shore. We were so happy to be alive.

لن أنسى أبداً العطلة التي قضيتها بجانب البحر الصيف الماضي. أولاً ، استأجرت أنا و أصدقائي قارب تدويس (تبديل) صغير. أبحرنا عدة كيلومترات في البحر. ثم ضربت موجة مفاجئة القارب و قلبته. كنا مذعورين للغاية. أول شيء صدمني كان أن صديق لم يكن سباحاً جيداً. أتذكر كيف حاولنا أن نهذاً بعضنا البعض . بصعوبة كبيرة تمكننا من السباحة للشاطئ . كنا مسرورين جداً كوننا على قيد الحياة .

UNIT – 3
Recycling resources

MODULE 1 : World issues**P : 14 Reading****1. Match these words and phrases with their meanings.**

a cloth	5 material or fabric used to make clothes
b fibre	1 a very small piece of paper, wood, cloth, etc.
c rot	4 decay
d sustainable	3 a practice or product that can be used or re-used without causing damage to the environment
e wood pulp	2 wood after it has been crushed

2. Read the article to find out whether these statements are True or False. Correct the false statements.

- All paper is made from wood. **False: paper can be made from various different materials**
- Only paper can be recycled. **False. Both paper and other materials can be recycled.**
- Recycling paper saves trees. **False: see lines 16-17**
- Most household waste is paper or cardboard. **True**

Paper: new from old

The first paper was made from cloth nearly two thousand years ago in China. Although paper can be made from all kinds of materials, such as cotton fibres, grass or sugar cane, these days wood pulp is the material most commonly used to make 'new paper' – that is, paper which contains no old or recycled paper.

The modern world uses so much paper that environmentalists have persuaded us that we should recycle old paper. There is an increasing awareness in Syria of the need to recycle both paper and other materials. Paper-recycling containers can now be found in some parts of the country and some government agencies have begun paper recycling programmes. Also, there is greater education in schools about the need to take care of our environment.

Although we use wood pulp from trees to make new paper, it is not true that recycling paper saves trees. Trees are a commercially grown long-term crop, so that when they are cut down, new ones are planted. Also, papermakers use the parts of trees that cannot be used in other industries such as building and furniture making. Nearly all new paper is made from wood grown in sustainable forests.

Here are some of the facts related to producing recycled paper:

الورق : جديد من القديم

لقد صنع الورق لأول مرة من القماش منذ حوالي ألفي سنة في الصين. وعلى الرغم أن الورق يمكن أن يصنع من كل أنواع المواد مثل ألياف (خيوط) القطن، العشب أو قصب السكر، حالياً (إلا أن) لب الخشب هي المادة الأكثر شيوعاً في صنع "الورق الجديد"، أي الورق الذي لا يحتوي على أوراق قديمة أو معاد تدويرها.

يستخدم العالم المعاصر الكثير من الورق لدرجة أن دعاة البيئة أقتنعوا بأننا يجب أن نعيد تصنيع الورق القديم. هناك وعي متزايد في سوريا للحاجة لإعادة تصنيع كلاً من الورق و المواد الأخرى. يمكن أن نجد مستوعبات إعادة تدوير الورق في بعض أجزاء البلاد و لقد بدأت بعض الوكالات الحكومية ببرامج إعادة تدوير الورق. و هناك أيضاً تثقيف واسع في المدارس حول الحاجة للاهتمام (العناية) ببيئتنا.

و على الرغم أننا نستخدم لب الخشب من الأشجار لنصنع الورق الجديد، إلا أنه ليس صحيحاً أن إعادة تدوير الورق ينقذ الأشجار. إن الأشجار محصول تجاري يزرع على المدى البعيد (الطويل)، لذلك عندما تقطع الأشجار، تُزرع أشجار جديدة. و أيضاً، يستخدم صانعو الورق الأجزاء من الشجر التي لا يمكن أن تستخدم في الصناعات الأخرى كالبناء أو صناعة المفروشات. كما أن كل الورق الجديد تقريباً يصنع من أخشاب أشجار مزروعة في غابات مستدامة.

فيما يلي بعض الحقائق المرتبطة بالورق المعاد تدويره :

- نسبة كبيرة من النفايات المنزلية هي من الورق أو الكرتون (الورق المقوى). و حوالي نصف هذا هو ورق جرائد (صحف) أو مجلات .

- A large proportion of household waste is paper or cardboard. About half of this is newspapers and magazines.
 - For every tonne of paper used for recycling, we save 30,000 litres of water, 3,000—4,000 kwh of electricity and reduce air pollution.
 - Recycling paper is less harmful to the environment than burying it in landfill sites. This is because paper that is buried in the ground rots and produces methane, which is a powerful greenhouse gas.
- Despite our increasing dependence on information stored on computers, there will always be a demand for paper. In the interests of our environment, we have to make sure that we continue to recycle as much of it as possible.

- لكل طن من الورق المستخدم لإعادة التدوير، توفر ٣٠ ألف لتر من الماء، ٣-٤ آلاف كيلو واط ساعي من الكهرباء وخفض تلوث الهواء .
 - إن إعادة تدوير الورق أقل ضرراً للبيئة من دفنها في المطامر و ذلك لأن الورق الذي يدفن يتحلل (يتعفن) و ينتج غاز الميثان و هو غاز دفيئة (بيت بلاستيكي) قوي .
- و على الرغم من اعتمادنا المتزايد على المعلومات المخزنة في الحواسيب ، إلا أنه سيكون هناك دائماً (طلب) حاجة للورق . و لصالح بيئتنا يجب علينا أن نتأكد من أننا نعيد تدوير الورق قدر المستطاع (ما أمكننا) .

P – 15

3. Read the article again and complete these sentences with words or phrases from this list. There are two more terms than you need.

air pollution - environment - greenhouse gas - household waste – materials - sustainable forests

- Grass and sugar cane are two of the **materials** that can be used to make paper.
- Trees used for making paper are grown in **sustainable forests** , where new trees are planted to replace ones which are cut down.
- About 50% of the paper and cardboard in **household waste** is made up of newspapers and magazines.
- Burying paper in landfill sites does more damage to the **environment** than recycling it.

4. Complete these sentences with information from the article.

- The Chinese **were the first people to make paper almost 2,000 years ago. The Chinese made paper from cloth almost 2,000 years ago.**
- Paper recycling containers **can now be found in some parts of Syria.**
- The building and furniture industries cannot **use every part of a tree.**

Vocabulary

1. Complete these conversations with one of these colour adjectives. There are some words which you do not need, and others that you need to use twice.

black – blue - brown – green - red – white - yellow

a

A Is that a letter you're reading?

B Yes, it's from an old friend. It came this morning – completely out of the **blue**.

b

A Have you heard? The government has given the **green** light to the building of a new airport.

B I think it's just a rumor.

A No, it's in the newspaper. Look – it's here in **black and white**.

c

A Calm down.

B Sorry – someone accused me of being lazy and I just saw **red**.

2. Rewrite these sentences in your notebook using the three-part phrasal verbs in brackets.

- a. I **can't wait for** **am looking forward to** the summer holidays in Syria. (*look forward to*)
- b. Environmentalists are working hard to **find** **come up with** new ways of saving energy. (*come up with*)
- c. If you want to improve your health, you should **reduce** **cut down on** the amount of sugar and fat you eat. (*cut down on*)
- d. My journey to work gets worse every day. I don't think I can **stand** **put up with** it for much longer. (*put up with*)

P – 16 Grammar Talking about wishes

1- Rewrite these sentences using the verb *wish* and the words in brackets. You can use *wish + would*, *wish + could* or *wish + past simple*.

a- You waste too much paper. (<i>stop wasting paper</i>)
<i>I wish you'd stop wasting paper.</i>
b- My brother spends many hours talking on the phone. (<i>not spend so many hours</i>)
<i>I wish my brother wouldn't spend so many hours on the phone.</i>
c- I'm very shy about talking in public. (<i>not so shy</i>)
<i>I wish I weren't so shy about talking in public.</i>
d- Newspapers and magazines contain too many adverts. (<i>not so many</i>)
<i>I wish newspapers and magazines didn't contain so many adverts.</i>
e- You eat too quickly. (<i>not eat so quickly</i>)
<i>I wish you wouldn't eat so quickly.</i>
f- I'm a very slow reader. (<i>not such a slow reader</i>)
<i>I wish I weren't such a slow reader.</i>
g- We don't spend much time together. (<i>spend more time</i>)
<i>I wish we could spend much more time together.</i>
h- The city centre is really busy this morning. (<i>not so busy</i>)
<i>I wish the city centre weren't so busy this morning.</i>
i- He's lost his keys. (<i>find his keys</i>)
<i>He wishes he could find his keys.</i>

2- Write sentences to follow these beginnings using the verb *wish*.

a- I'm not old enough to go to university.	I wish I were older
b- I'm not very good at maths.	I wish I were better at maths.
c- Hani speaks really quickly.	I wish Hani spoke more slowly.
d- I can't speak French.	I wish I could speak French.
e- You're always losing things.	I wish you didn't always lose things.
f- We have to start work very early tomorrow morning.	I wish we didn't have to start work so early tomorrow morning.
g- Going to the theatre is expensive.	I wish going to the theatre weren't so expensive.

P 17 – 18

مشترك مع كتاب الطالب صفحة 27

Write a report based on waste statistics

Students' Book- P 27

Write a report based on waste and recycling materials

The disposal of waste materials in landfill sites has become rarer. Last year Syria took a substantial stride towards top countries in recycling of municipal waste. The recycling quantities of glass and metal waste increased by 15 per cent. And the recycling of plastic has risen by 40 % . But there has been no such trend in electronic and electrical waste materials. Moreover, the contribution from the new metal recovery facility in Hama increased the amount of metal recycled from 1.2 million in 2013 tonnes to 1.8 million tonnes 2014.

إن التخلص من النفايات في المكبات أصبح أكثر ندرةً . العام الماضي قطعت سوريا شوطاً كبيراً باتجاه أفضل البلدان في إعادة تدوير النفايات المحلية . لقد زادت كمية نفايات الزجاج المعاد تدويرها بحوالي ١٥ % . و إعادة تدوير البلاستيك قد زادت بنسبة تصل إلى ٤٠ % . و لكن لم يكن هناك هذا الميل بالنسبة لنفايات المواد الإلكترونية و الكهربائية . علاوة على ذلك ، فإن مساهمة منشأة (معمل) حماة لاستعادة المعادن قد زادت من كمية المعادن المعاد تدويرها من ١.٢ مليون طن عام ٢٠١٣ إلى ١.٨ مليون عام ٢٠١٤ .

Progress test 1

Reading

P – 19

1- Complete the article below with words from this list. Use each word only once.

after – are - can - do - in - like - of - than - their - to – used - where - which – with

Who are the economic migrants?

In 2003, 410,000 non-British citizens came (1) **to** live in the UK and 100,000 British people returned to their home country from Spain, Australia and other countries where they had gone to live or work. (2) **In** the same period, 170,000 non-British citizens left the UK to live in other countries. 190,000 British people also left. This means a total increase (3) **of** 150,000 in the British population, but (4) **where** did all these immigrants come from and go to? Many new arrivals (5) **are** economic migrants – people who come because they can earn more money in Britain (6) **than** in their own country. Traditionally, many of these migrants (7) **used** to come from countries in Africa or Asia, but now growing numbers are from less developed countries in Eastern Europe such as Poland, Hungary or Russia. Many new migrants take low-paid jobs (8) **which** British people do not want to (9) **do** , like cleaning, picking fruit and vegetables, looking (10) **after** old people or doing repetitive factory work. A minority come to work in well-paid jobs, for example as dentists or doctors. Many of these migrants do not intend to stay in Britain, and send some of (11) **their** earnings home to their families. But even though they earn higher wages than they would in their own countries, most economic migrants (12) **can** only afford to live a simple life. Some share accommodation (13) **with** another migrant family. British citizens who leave the UK to live abroad go mainly to countries with warmer climates and cheaper houses, countries (14) **like** Spain, Greece, France or Turkey.

من هم المهاجرون الاقتصاديون ؟

في عام ٢٠٠٣ قديم ٤١٠ آلاف مواطن غير بريطاني للعيش في المملكة المتحدة و عاد مئة ألف بريطاني إلى وطنهم من إسبانيا ، استراليا و بلدان أخرى حيث كانوا قد ذهبوا للعيش أو العمل . في نفس الفترة غادر ١٧٠ ألف مواطن غير بريطاني المملكة المتحدة للعيش في بلدان أخرى . كما غادر ١٩٠ ألف بريطاني أيضاً . و هذا يعني زيادة إجمالية تبلغ ١٥٠ ألف شخص في التعداد السكاني البريطاني ، و لكن من أين أتى كل هؤلاء المهاجرون و إلى أين ذهبوا ؟ العديد من القادمين (الوافدين) هم مهاجرون اقتصاديون - أناس أتوا لأنهم يستطيعون أن يكسبوا مالاً أكثر في بريطانيا من بلادهم . بشكل تقليدي ، اعتاد العديد من المهاجرين أن يأتوا من بلدان في إفريقيا و آسيا و لكن حالياً هناك أعداد متزايدة تأتي من بلدان أقل تقدماً في أوربا الشرقية كبولندا ، هنغاريا و روسيا . يعمل العديد من المهاجرين في وظائف ذات أجر منخفض و التي لا يرغب البريطانيون بعملها كالتنظيف ، قطف الثمار (الفواكه) و الخضار ، الاعتناء بكبار السن أو القيام بأعمال روتينية (متكررة) في المصانع . و هناك أقلية تأتي للعمل في وظائف ذات أجر جيد كالأطباء و أطباء الأسنان . العديد من هؤلاء المهاجرين لا ينوون (يميلون لـ) البقاء في بريطانيا ، و يرسلون بعض مكاسبهم إلى عائلاتهم في الوطن . و لكن على الرغم أنهم يكسبون أجوراً أعلى مما سيكسبونه في بلادهم فإن معظم المهاجرين الاقتصاديين يستطيعون فقط تحمل كلفة حياة بسيطة . و بعضهم يتشارك السكن مع عائلة مهاجرة أخرى . المواطنون البريطانيون الذين يغادرون المملكة المتحدة للعيش في الخارج يذهبون بشكل رئيسي إلى بلدان ذات مناخات أكثر دفئاً و ذات منازل أرخص ، بلدان مثل إسبانيا ، اليونان ، فرنسا أو تركيا .

2- Choose the correct words or phrases in these sentences.

- In 2003, (more / fewer) people in total came to live in Britain than left Britain to live in other countries.
- (More / Fewer) British people arrived in Britain than left Britain.
- Economic migrants earn (more / less) money in their home countries than in Britain.
- More and more migrants are arriving from Eastern (Europe / Africa) and Asia.
- Most migrants who come to Britain do (high-paid / low-paid) work.

P – 20 Grammar and Vocabulary

1- Choose the correct verb form to complete these sentences. (Sometimes both forms may be possible.)

Sofia (1) (**arrived** / has arrived) in England from Poland seven years ago. Since then she (2) (**worked** / **has worked**) as a primary school teacher. She (3) (**went** / **has been**) back to Poland several times to see her family, but she (4) (**never wanted** / **has never wanted**) to stay there. Two years ago she (5) (**got married** / has got married) to another teacher at her school, and the couple (6) (recently had / **have recently had**) a baby. When Sofia (7) (**first arrived** / has first arrived) in Britain, she (8) (**didn't imagine** / hasn't imagined) she would settle here. For the first year she (9) (**suffered** / has suffered) from culture shock and (10) (**wanted** / has wanted) to go home, but she (11) (**quickly learned** / has quickly learned) the language and (12) (**made** / has made) new friends. In the seven years Sofia has been in England, she (13) (became / **has become**) so used to the way of life that she really feels at home there.

وصلت صوفيا إلى انكلترا من بولندا منذ سبع سنوات . و منذ ذلك الحين عملت كمدرسة في مدرسة ابتدائية . لقد ذهبت إلى بولندا عدة مرات لترى عائلتها . و لكنها لم ترد أبداً أن تبقى هناك . منذ عامين تزوجت من مدرس آخر في مدرستها، و لقد رزق الزوجان مؤخراً بطفل . عندما وصلت صوفيا إلى بريطانيا لأول مرة لم تتخيل أنها قد تبقى هنا . طوال السنة الأولى عانت من صدمة ثقافية و أرادت أن تعود للوطن ، و لكنها تعلمت اللغة بسرعة و كونت أصدقاء جدد . خلال السنوات السبع التي قضتها صوفيا في انكلترا ، أصبحت معتادة جداً على نمط الحياة ذاك لدرجة أنها حقاً تشعر أنها في الوطن هناك .

P – 20

2- Complete these conversations using the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Choose the present perfect simple or present perfect continuous. (Sometimes both forms may be possible.)

a.

A You look very pale. Are you feeling all right?

B I'm really tired. I **haven't been sleeping** (not sleep) very well recently.A Do you mean you **have been waking up** (wake up) very early?B No, I **haven't slept** (not sleep) at all for three nights.

.a

A - تبدو شاحباً . هل تشعر أنك على ما يرام ؟

B - أنا متعب حقاً . لم أكن أنام بشكل جيد مؤخراً .

A - هل تعني أنك كنت تستيقظ باكراً جداً ؟

B - كلا أنا لم أنم على الإطلاق منذ (لمدة) ثلاثة أيام .

b.

A **have you spoken** (you speak) to Ibrahim recently?B No, I **haven't seen** (not see) him for over a week.A Perhaps he **has been spending** (spend) all his time with his family.

b.

A - هل تحدثت مع ابراهيم مؤخراً ؟

B - كلا ، لم أراه منذ أكثر من أسبوع .

A - ربما كان يمضي كل وقته مع عائلته .

c.

A I **have been thinking** (think) about taking up tennis.B So have I. **Have you played** (you play) it before?A No, but I **have watched** / **have been watching** (watch) a lot of tennis on TV this summer.

c.

A - كنت أفكر بممارسة التنس .

B - و أنا أيضاً . هل سبق لك أن لعبتها من قبل ؟

A - كلا و لكنني شاهدت / كنت أشاهد الكثير من التنس على التلفاز هذا الصيف .

3- Complete this story with verbs from the list below. Use one of these tenses: past simple, past continuous, present perfect or past perfect. Notice that some verbs are negative.

be - bump (x2) - do - say - not see - take - think - walk – wonder

I (1) **was walking** through town the other day, when suddenly I (2) **thought** about my friend Tareq. I (3) **hadn't seen** him for several weeks and I (4) **wondered** what he (5) **was doing**. I (6) **took** out my mobile phone, when somebody (7) **bumped** into me. "Sorry," I (8) **said**. The person who (9) **had bumped** into me (10) was my friend Tareq!

كنت أسير عبر (خلال) البلدة في اليوم السابق عندما فكرت فجأةً بصديقي طارق. لم أكن قد رأيته منذ عدة أسابيع و تساءلت ماذا كان يفعل . أخرجت هاتفي الجوال عندما اصطدم بي شخص ما . 'أسف' قلت . الشخص الذي اصطدم بي كان صديقي طارق .

4- Write sentences starting with I wish in response to these statements.

a I can't sing very well.

I wish I could sing better.

b I'm really tired this morning.

I wish I weren't so tired this morning.

c My friend won't give me my CD back.

I wish my friend would give me my CD back.

d It's too hot to go out today.

I wish it weren't so hot today./ I wish it were cooler today.

e I can't remember where I left the newspaper.

I wish I could remember where I left the newspaper.

f Her music is too loud for me.

I wish she would turn her music down.

P – 21

5- Choose the correct colour words in this text.

The authorities have just given the (1) (blue / **green**) light to the building of a new airport. The news has come out of the (2) (black / **blue**), and shocked many villagers. The thought of a new airport near their homes has made many of them see (3) (black / **red**). Unfortunately, the plans have already been prepared – I've seen them in (4) (**black** / white) and (5) (black / **white**).

لقد أعطت السلطات الضوء الأخضر (الموافقة) لبناء مطار جديد . لقد ذيع (صدر) الخبر بشكل غير متوقع و صدم العديد من القرويين . إن فكرة مطار جديد بالقرب من منازلهم جعلت العديد منهم يستشيطنون غضباً . لسوء الحظ تم إعداد الخطط - لقد رأيتهما في الصحيفة .

6- There is a word missing in each of these sentences. Rewrite the sentences, including the missing words.

- I'm so busy I find it very hard to keep up **with** the news.
- There's nowhere to park in the city centre. The car parks usually run out **of** spaces by 8 o'clock in the morning.
- They have been working very hard recently, so they're really looking forward **to** their holidays.
- They live very close to the airport, and they're finding it very difficult to put up **with** the noise.
- Everything was going very well until they came up **against** an unexpected problem.

Activity book-page 22

Write a letter to a local newspaper making recommendations to solve (there are very few public places in your town where people can go to keep fit)

Dear sir

There are very few public places in my town where people go to keep fit. Young people don't have any nearby gyms to do their favorite sports. I recommend that your newspaper urges the council to build two or three gyms for people. I would also recommend that they make running and jogging trails in parks. I hope your newspaper will take these suggestions into consideration.

سيدي العزيز

هناك عدد قليل جداً من الأماكن العامة في بلدي حيث يستطيع الناس الذهاب ليحافظوا على لياقتهم. لا يوجد لدى الشباب أية نوادي قريبة لكي يمارسوا رياضاتهم المفضلة. أنا أوصي (أنصح) أن تحت صحيفةكم المجلس على بناء ناديين أو ثلاثة للشباب. و أوصي أيضاً أن يبنوا مسارات للركض و الهرولة في المتنزهات. أنا أمل بأن تأخذ صحيفةكم هذه الاقتراحات بعين الاعتبار.

(very few tourists come to your town because they know nothing about it)

Dear sir

Although our town offers some really unique and amazing things to see and do, very few tourists come here because they know nothing about it. I recommend your newspaper make free posters promoting the beautiful ruins and monuments of our town. I also recommend you put a different photograph of our festivals and events in your newspaper every day. You can show people all the activities and attractions currently available in the town.

سيدي العزيز

على الرغم من أن بلدنا تقدم بعض الأشياء الفريدة و المذهلة فعلاً، إلا أن عدداً قليلاً جداً من السياح يأتون إلى هنا لأنهم لا يعرفون شيئاً عنها. أنا أوصي بأن تصنع صحيفةكم ملصقات مجانية تروج للآثار و المعالم الجميلة في بلدنا. و أوصي أيضاً أن تضعوا صورةً مختلفة للمهرجانات و الأحداث في صحيفةكم كل يوم. بإمكانكم أن تظهروا للناس كل النشاطات و المجاذب السياحية المتوفرة في البلدة.

UNIT 4

The Earth at risk

MODULE 2: Natural world

Reading

- a- How many different groups of people live in the South American rainforests? **180**
- b- What are most soya beans used for? **to feed chickens**
- c- Why are the rainforests being destroyed? (Four reasons are given.)
to grow soya beans / to make land for cattle / to look for oil / for valuable wood.

P – 23

Feeding chickens is destroying the climate

The rainforest of the Amazon region of Brazil in South America covers five percent of the world's land surface and is home to at least 30 percent of the world's animals and plants. The area is also the home of 220,000 people from about 180 different tribes who live deep in the forest. The rainforest itself is an important environment but, because of its size and location, it also plays a vital part in controlling the world's climate. It does this by taking in carbon dioxide and releasing oxygen. Recently, however, large areas of the Amazon rainforest have been cut down to make more land for farmers. In the last three years, for example, 70,000 square kilometres have been destroyed – this is the same as six football pitches every minute. Much of this destruction, which leaves the land dry and dusty, is illegal.

Farmers use most of the new land to grow soya beans, which they export to other parts of the world to be used as animal food. Millions of chickens in western European countries are fed on South American soya beans. Increasingly, some soya beans are also being turned into food for human consumption; many vegetarian foods are based on soya beans.

Other areas of the rainforest are cleared by ranchers who use the land for their cattle, by loggers who sell the valuable tropical hardwood from the trees they cut down, or by oil companies who are trying to find more oil. These activities help to improve the economy of the region, but at the expense of the future of the global environment.

In addition to destroying ancient forests and changing the world's climate, deforestation is having a devastating effect on native populations who are dependent on the rainforest for everything they need, from food and tools to medicines and shelter.

إطعام الدجاج يدمر المناخ

إن الغابات المطرية في منطقة الأمازون في البرازيل في أمريكا الجنوبية تغطي ٥% من سطح اليابسة في العالم و هي موطن لـ ٣٠% من حيوانات و نباتات العالم . كما أن المنطقة موطن لـ ٢٢٠ ألف إنسان من ١٨٠ قبيلة مختلفة تعيش في عمق الغابة . إن الغابة المطرية بحد ذاتها بيئة هامة و لكن بسبب حجمها و موقعها فهي تلعب أيضاً دوراً حيوياً في التحكم (السيطرة - ضبط) بمناخ العالم . تقوم بذلك من خلال استهلاك ثاني أكسيد الكربون و إطلاق الأوكسجين .

مؤخراً بأي حال تم قطع مساحات كبيرة من غابات الأمازون المطرية من أجل إنشاء (إحداث) المزيد من الأراضي للمزارعين . خلال السنوات الثلاث الماضية على سبيل المثال تم تدمير ٧٠ ألف كيلومتر مربع - و هذا يعادل ما مساحته ٦ ملاعب كرة قدم في كل دقيقة . معظم هذا التدمير الذي يترك الأرض جافةً و مغبرة هو غير شرعي .

يستخدم المزارعون معظم الأرض الجديدة لزراعة فول الصويا و الذي يصدره لأجزاء أخرى من العالم لكي يستخدم كطعام للحيوانات . الملايين من طيور الدجاج في بلدان أوروبا الغربية (غرب أوروبا) يتم إطعامها فول صويا أمريكا الجنوبية . و بشكل متزايد يتم تحويل بعض فول الصويا إلى طعام للاستهلاك البشري ، فمعظم طعام النباتيين يركز على فول الصويا .

و هناك مناطق أخرى من الغابات المطرية تُزال (تفزع) من قبل أصحاب المزارع الذين يستخدمون الأرض من أجل قطعانهم و ذلك بواسطة الحطابين الذين يبيعون الخشب المداري القاسي من الأشجار التي يقطعونها ، أو بواسطة شركات النفط التي تحاول أن تجد المزيد من النفط . تساعد هذه النشاطات في تحسين اقتصاد المنطقة و لكن على حساب مستقبل البيئة العالمي .

بالإضافة لتدمير الغابات القديمة و تغيير مناخ العالم ، فإن قطع الأشجار له تأثير مدمر على السكان المحليين و الذين يعتمدون على الغابات المطرية في كل شيء يحتاجونه ، من الطعام و الأدوات إلى الأدوية و المأوى .

2- Read the article again and match each beginning a-d with one of the endings 1-5.**There is one more ending than you need.**

a. Nearly a third of the world's animals and plants	2 are found in the Amazon rainforest.
b. The rainforest has an important influence on	5 the Earth's climate.
c. Extra farming land is created when	1 areas of the rainforest are cut down.
d. Vegetarians, as well as animals,	3 consume soya beans.
	4 use the land for their cattle.

3- Answer these questions with information from the article.

- a- Who lives deep in the forest? **180 different tribes**
- b- What is illegal? **much of the destruction of the rainforest**
- c- What is used as animal food? **soya beans**
- d- Who grows soya beans? **farmers**
- e- Who uses cleared land for cattle? **ranchers.**

5- Match these words from the article with their meanings.

a consumption	2 the eating or drinking of something
b devastating	4 very destructive
c export	6 send something for sale in another country
d global	1 affecting the whole world
e illegal	5 against the law
f tool	3 a piece of equipment for doing a particular job

Vocabulary**1- Choose the best word to complete these sentences.**

- a- A country where the sun always shines has a dry (*climate* / weather).
- b- You feel cold when the temperature is (high / *low*).
- c- When there is no wind, we say the weather is (*calm* / stormy).
- d- Farmers listen to the (climate / *weather*) forecast to decide when to harvest their crops.

2- Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the list.**mishear - reorganize - misuse - redo**

- a. I'm sorry, I **misheard** you. I thought you said you'd prefer tea.
- b. I did my homework too quickly, so the teacher asked me to **redo** it.
- c. As we have some new employees, we will have to **reorganize** our office.
- d. If you **misuse** the equipment, it will not work properly.

Explanations and results

1- Complete these sentences using one of the words or phrases from the list. More than one answer may be possible.

because - in order to - so that - to - with the result that

- a- The Amazon rainforest has an important effect on the climate of the world **because** it covers such a large area.
- b- Large areas of forest have been cut down, **with the result that** the soil is now dry and dusty.
- c- The rainforest has been cut down **to / in order to** make more farmland.
- d- Farmers need more land **so that** they can grow more soya beans.
- e- Loggers cut down trees **to / in order to** sell the wood.

2- Answer these questions using the words in brackets and one of these words or phrases:

because - in order to - so that - to

- a. Why didn't Fadia go to school yesterday? (feel ill)
- **Fadia didn't go to school yesterday because she felt / was feeling ill.**
- b. Why did you go to the post office? (buy stamps)
- **I went to the post office to buy / in order to buy / because I wanted to buy stamps / so that I could buy stamps.**
- c. Why did Ahmad go to the airport? (meet his brother, Khaled)
- **Ahmad went to the airport to meet / in order to meet / because he had to meet / so that he could meet his brother Khaled.**
- d. Why do people write things in their diaries? (not forget important things)
- **People write things in their diaries because they don't want to / so that they don't / in order not to / forget important things.**
- e. Why was Omar's letter so difficult to read? (write very quickly)
- **Omar's letter was difficult to read because he wrote it / had written it very quickly.**

3- What do the words in bold in the text on page 23 refer to:

- a- *Its* refers to the rainforest
- b- *This* refers to 70,000 square kilometres
- c- *They* refers to native populations

Activity book-page 27

Write a description of a photograph using position words , adjectives and weather words

In the middle of this picture, I can see a very big tree lying on the ground. It is clear that a powerful storm or a hurricane has caused a lot of destruction in the area. In the background of the picture, I can see a wooden cottage. It is surrounded with big trees. It could be in a forest. The sky looks cloudy. Maybe it is winter.

في وسط الصورة أستطيع أن أرى شجرة ضخمة ملقاة على الأرض . من الواضح أن عاصفة قوية أو إعصاراً قد سبب الكثير من الدمار . في خلفية الصورة أستطيع أن أرى كوخاً خشبياً . إنه محاط بالأشجار الكبيرة . ربما هو موجود في غابة . السماء تبدو غائمة . ربما هو فصل الشتاء .

UNIT 5
A world of plants

MODULE 2: Natural world**1. match these words and phrases with their meanings.**

a seed	3 a small, hard part of a plant from which a new plant can grow
b thorn	1 a sharp pointed part that grows on a plant, e.g. a rose
c trunk	2 the main part or large stem of a tree

2. Read the article and choose the most suitable title.**b How plants protect themselves from their enemies**

p - 28

It may seem very strange, but plants are always in danger from animals which want to feed on them. If this happens, the plant can be damaged or even killed. So, because their roots, trunks, leaves, flowers, fruits and seeds are under constant attack from mammals, insects or birds, plants have developed ways of protecting themselves from these enemies. Here are some of the ways plants stop animals from attacking and eating them.

Sharp thorns and stings

Some plants which grow in dry climates, for example cactuses, store large quantities of water in their stems. To protect themselves, they have sharp thorns. Animals will hurt themselves if they try to get to the water from these plants. Other plants, like stinging nettles, can 'inject' painful or irritating substances into their enemies by means of the sharp hairs on their leaves.

Poison

There are many plants which protect themselves by poisoning their enemies. In some cases the poison they contain is so powerful that it can kill any living thing which touches or eats them. The poison can be in the leaves, the seeds or berries, or in other parts of the plant.

Insects

Some acacia trees in hot African countries are protected by ants which live permanently on their branches. If an animal starts to eat the tree's leaves, the ants attack it.

Sticky gum

Some plants, such as horse chestnut trees, are covered with a sticky substance, like wet paint, which can prevent insects from eating them. Sometimes this substance is so strong that insects' feet or wings get stuck and they cannot escape.

قد يبدو ذلك غريباً و لكن بعض النباتات في خطر دائم من الحيوانات التي تريد أن تتغذى عليها. إذا حدث ذلك يمكن أن تتلف النبتة أو حتى تموت. لذلك و لأن جذورها ، جذوعها ، أوراقها ، أزهارها ، ثمارها و بذورها معرضة للهجوم الدائم من الثدييات ، الحشرات أو الطيور ، فإن النباتات قد طورت طرقاً لحماية أنفسها من هذه الحيوانات. فيما يلي بعض الطرق (الأساليب) التي تمنع النباتات بها الحيوانات من مهاجمتها و أكلها (الأساليب التي تستخدمها النباتات لمنع الحيوانات من مهاجمتها).

الأشواك و الإبر الحادة

بعض النباتات التي تنمو في المناخات الجافة على سبيل المثال الصباريات تخزن كميات ضخمة من الماء في جذوعها. لكي تحمي نفسها لها أشواك حادة. سوف تؤذي الحيوانات نفسها إن حاولت الوصول للماء في هذه النباتات. و يمكن لنباتات أخرى مثل القراص اللاسع أن تحقن مواد مؤلمة أو مهيجة في أعضائها بواسطة الشعيرات الحادة على أوراقها.

السم

هناك العديد من النباتات التي تحمي نفسها بتسميم أعضائها. و في بعض الحالات يمكن للسم الذي تحتويه أن يكون قوياً جداً لدرجة أنه يستطيع أن يقتل أي شيء (كائن) حي يلمسها أو يأكلها. و يمكن أن يكون السم في الأوراق ، في الثمار (ثمار العليق) أو في أجزاء أخرى من النبات.

الحشرات

بعض أشجار الأكاسيا في البلاد الإفريقية الحارة تُحمى من قبل النمل الذي يعيش بشكل دائم على أغصانها. و إذا بدأ حيوان ما بأكل أوراق الشجرة يهاجمه النمل.

الاصمغ (الدبق) اللاصق

بعض النباتات مثل أشجار بندق الحصان مغطاة بمادة دبقة (لزجة) ، كالطلاء الرطب ، تمنع الحشرات من أكلها. تكون هذه المادة أحياناً (دبقة) قوية جداً لدرجة أن أرجل أو أجنحة الحشرات تعلق و لا تستطيع الفرار (الهروب - النجاة).

3. Read the article again and answer these questions.

a. Why do plants need to protect themselves?	because animals might damage or kill them
b. Which part of a nettle can hurt enemies?	the hairs on its leaves
c. Where can the poison be found in plants?	in many parts, including the leaves, the seeds and the berries
d. Why do plants need to protect themselves against insects?	because the insects want to eat them
e. Which plant is protected by a kind of insect?	some acacia trees in Africa

4. Answer these questions about two of the adjectives from the article.

a. Which of these is not *sharp*?

a cactus thorn **a banana** a kitchen knife broken glass a cat's tooth

b. Which of these is not *sticky*?

chewing gum sugary food **water** wet paint glue

vocabulary

1- Choose the correct phrases to complete these sentences.

- a- Aubergines grow (**on plants** / under the ground).
- b- Tea grows (on trees / **on bushes**).
- c- Dates grow (on the ground / **on trees**).
- d- Potatoes grow (on the ground / **under the ground**).

2- Complete these sentences with similar information to that given in exercise 1.

- a. Turnips and sweet potatoes **grow under the ground.**
- b. Olives and lemons **grow on trees.**
- c. Lentils **grow on plants.**

3- Complete these sentences with the correct preposition.

- a- Cactuses depend **on** their thorns to protect them.
- b- The acacia tree is famous **for** being protected by ants. This makes it different **from** most ordinary plants.
- c- I've always been interested **in** plants and trees, but I'm not keen **on** insects.
- d- My *Encyclopaedia of Nature* is full **of** interesting facts about plants.

Explaining possibilities

1- Write sentences to explain these situations, using the words in brackets in your answers

- a- The phone is ringing – it's probably your brother. He usually rings at this time. (*It might ...*)
- **It might be my brother. He usually rings at this time.**
- b- Someone's ringing your doorbell. You're sure it's the postman – he always comes at this time. (*It must ...*)
- **It must be the postman (at the door). He always comes at this time.**
- c- There's an important football match in your town tonight. You think the roads will probably be very busy. (The roads might ...)
- **The roads might be very busy tonight. There's an important football match in town.**
- d- Your friend said she would phone you, but she hasn't. You are sure she has not forgotten. (She can't ...)
- **She can't have forgotten to phone me.**
- e- Someone waves to you from a car. It looks like your friend's father's car. (It might ...)
- **It might be my friend's father. It looks like his car.**
- f- Your sister has worked very hard. You feel sure that she has got good grades in her exams. (She must ...)
- **She must have got good grades in her exams. She has worked very hard.**
- g- You hear a car approaching, but you know it isn't your uncle's car because it doesn't sound the same. (It can't ...)
- **It can't be my uncle's car. It doesn't have the same sound.**
- h- A new building is going up in your neighbourhood. You think it is probably a school. (They might ...)
- **They might be building a new school.**

2- Write sentences which explain the following situations. Include the words given and a modal verb in your explanations.

- a- Faisal's car lights were on all night. (Faisal / forget / switch off)
- **Faisal must have forgotten to switch the lights off.**
- b- Ahmad's looking at the engine of his car. (break down)
- **Ahmad's / His car must have broken down**
- c- Khaled has a very good English accent. (live / English family)
- **Khaled / He might have lived / be living with an English family.**
- d- Tareq wants to be a teacher when he graduates from university. (very interested in / education)
- **Tareq / He must be very interested in education.**
- e- Ali has just drunk two litres of water. (thirsty)
- **Ali / He must have been very thirsty.**

Writing an informal letter describing a visit

1- Read this beginning of a letter from Donald to his friend Mike.

- a- What did Donald enjoy most about his visit?
- **Swimming with the fish and taking photographs of them.**
b- Why was Donald disappointed at the end of the day?
- **The day was too short – there was so much more to see.**

Dear Mike

We're really enjoying our holiday in Lattakia. Yesterday we went swimming in the Mediterranean. It was the first time I had swum in the sea and it was really exciting! There are hundreds of species of fish and plants. We spotted some really colourful fish. We swam close to them and took photos with our underwater camera. This was the best moment of my trip. I'll show you the photos when I get home.

Near Lattakia there is a shipwreck. We swam over the wrecked boat and we saw many sea creatures swimming around it; it was one of the most interesting things I've ever seen! We wore wetsuits, which I found a little uncomfortable, although they meant we didn't feel the cold at all.

We visited the nesting site of the green sea turtles that come to the shore in Lattakia to lay their eggs. Turtles are very rare in this part of the world so we had to be really quiet so we didn't disturb them! Unfortunately the day was too short, and there was so much more to see. We're leaving tomorrow, but if we come to Syria again, I'm going to go back to Lattakia.

We've done lots of other things. The day after we arrived, we ...

عزيزي مايك

نحن نستمتع حقاً بعطلتنا في اللاذقية . البارحة ذهبنا للسباحة في المتوسط . لقد كانت أول مرة أسبح فيها في البحر و كان ذلك مثيراً ! يوجد المئات من فصائل (أنواع) السمك و النباتات . لقد رأينا (صادفنا) بعض الأسماك الملونة جداً . سبحنا قريبها و التقطنا صوراً بكاميرا تحت الماء خاصتنا . لقد كانت تلك أفضل لحظة في رحلتي . سوف أريك الصور عندما أعود للوطن (المنزل).

يوجد حطام سفينة بالقرب من اللاذقية . سبحنا فوق السفينة الغارقة و رأينا العديد من المخلوقات (الكائنات) البحرية تسبح حولها ، كان ذلك أحد أمتع الأشياء التي رأيتها يوماً (على الإطلاق) ! لقد ارتدينا بدلات غوص و جدتها غير مريحة قليلاً على الرغم أنها لم تجعلنا نشعر بالبرد على الإطلاق .

لقد زرنا موقع تفريخ سلاحف البحر الخضراء التي تأتي إلى شاطئ اللاذقية لتضع بيوضها . السلاحف نادرة جداً في هذا الجزء من العالم لذلك كان علينا أن نكون هادئين جداً لكي لا نزعجها ! لسوء الحظ كان النهار (اليوم) قصيراً جداً و كان هناك الكثير من الأشياء لنراها . سوف نغادر غداً ، و لكن إذا أتينا (عدنا) ثانيةً إلى سوريا سوف أعود إلى اللاذقية.

لقد قمنا بالكثير من الأشياء الأخرى . في اليوم الذي تلا وصولنا

.....

Ibrahim Ghanam

2- Read the letter again and find:**a- five facts about Lattakia.****Facts:**

Lattakia is on the Mediterranean Sea.
 There are hundreds of fish and plant species.
 There is a shipwreck near Lattakia.
 Green sea turtles come to the shore in Lattakia to lay eggs.
 Turtles are rare in this part of the world.

b- five opinions or feelings expressed by the writer.**Opinions and feelings:**

We're really enjoying our holiday in Lattakia.
 It was really exciting!
 This was the best moment one of the most interesting things I've ever seen
 which I found a little uncomfortable.
 Unfortunately the day was too short.

c- examples of contracted verb forms.**Contracted verb forms:**

We're enjoying / I'll show / I've ever seen / we didn't feel / we didn't disturb / We're leaving / I'm going to / We've done

Activity book-page 32**Write a letter to a friend , describing an interesting place you have visited**

Dear Ahmad

How are you? I'm writing this letter from Slunfeh in the countryside of Lattakia. We're having a wonderful time here. There's a lot to do and see. Slunfeh is full of fruit orchards, camping sites and restaurants. Its cool weather and wonderful mountains attract a lot of tourists. I enjoyed most seeing the Ghab valley from the top. I took some brilliant photos. If you visit it, you'll really enjoy the place.

عزيمي أحمد

كيف حالك؟ أمل أن تكون بخير. أنا أكتب هذه الرسالة من صلفه في ريف اللاذقية. نحن نقضي وقتاً رائعاً هنا. يوجد الكثير لنقوم به ونراه. إن صلفه غنية ببساتين الفواكه، أماكن الاستجمام، مواقع التخييم و المطاعم الراقية. هوائها النقي، طقسها المعتدل و جبالها الرائعة تجذب الكثير من السياح. لقد استمتعت أكثر برؤية سهل الغاب من القمة. لقد التقطت بعض الصور المذهلة. إذا زرتها فإنك ستستمتع حقاً بالمكان.

UNIT 6
Under threat

Reading**1- Read the article about animal habitats and find the answers to these questions.**

- a- Which of the three types of animals described in the article has the most different species?
- **Kangaroos (45 species)**
- b- What is special about kangaroos and similar animals?
- **They are marsupials – they carry their young in a pouch**

P – 33

Animals and their habitats

Animals live everywhere on Earth, in every terrain and in all climates. The place where an animal lives is called its habitat and most animals can only survive in one or two different habitats. For example, whales are sea creatures and cannot live in fresh water; lizards live in hot climates and would die if they were moved to the Arctic. Some animals migrate between two habitats at different times of the year. In this article, you will find out about two animals which can live in different habitats, and one which has adapted to a particular environment.

Penguins

There are seventeen different species of penguins, including the famous Emperor penguins and the common Chinstrap penguins. All of these live in the southern hemisphere – many in Antarctica around the South Pole. But some live in warmer places, for example on the coasts of South America, Africa, Australia, and the Galapagos Islands. Many of the 13 million Chinstrap penguins live on large icebergs in the open ocean.

Kangaroos

Kangaroos and their close relatives, wallabies, are only found naturally in Australia and Papua New Guinea. Like wombats and koala bears, kangaroos are marsupials, which means that when young are born they are carried by their mothers in a pouch. There are forty-five species of kangaroos and wallabies and they live in every kind of habitat, from open plains to forests and rocky deserts. Tree kangaroos live in remote and mountainous forest regions and have adapted to life in trees. Unlike other kangaroos, they cannot move very fast on the ground.

Jerboas

The jerboa lives all over Asia and Northern Africa. This animal lives in hot desert climates and is common in the Syrian Desert. There are 25 different species of jerboa and they are specially adapted to live in extremely dry climates. They have very short front legs and long back legs which enable them to hop quickly over the ground to escape predators. They are nocturnal animals, which means they sleep during the day.

الحيوانات و مواطنها

تعيش الحيوانات في كل مكان على الأرض ، في كل منطقة (إقليم) و في كل المناخات - المكان الذي يعيش فيه حيوان ما يسمى بموطنه و تستطيع معظم الحيوانات أن تحيا في موطن أو موطنين . الحيتان على سبيل المثال هي مخلوقات بحرية و لا تستطيع أن تعيش في المياه العذبة، و السحالي تعيش في المناخات الحارة و ستموت إن تم نقلها إلى المنطقة القطبية الشمالية. تهاجر بعض الحيوانات بين موطنين في أوقات مختلفة من العام . في هذه المقالة سوف تتعلمون عن حيوانين يستطيعان أن يعيشا في موطن مختلف و عن حيوان تكيف مع بيئة محددة .

البطاريق

هناك سبع عشرة فصيلة مختلفة من البطاريق ، بما فيها البطريق الإمبراطوري (الملك) و البطاريق المطوقة الشائعة . و جميعها يعيش في نصف الكرة الأرضية الجنوبي - و العديد منها في المنطقة القطبية الجنوبية حول القطب الجنوبي . و لكن بعضها يعيش في أماكن أكثر دفناً على سبيل المثال سواحل أمريكا الجنوبية ، إفريقيا ، استراليا و جزر غالاباغوس . يعيش عدد كبير (العديد) من الثلاثة عشر مليون بطريق مطوق على الجبال الجليدية في المحيط المفتوح .

الكناعر

إن الكناعر و أقاربها حيوانات الوب توجد بشكل طبيعي فقط في استراليا و بابوا نيو غينيا . مثل حيوان الومبات و دببة الكوالا تعتبر الكناعر من الجرابيات (الكيسيات) و هذا يعني أن الصغار عندما تولد تُحمل من قبل أمهاتها داخل جراب (كيس) . هناك ٤٥ نوعاً من الكناعر و الوب و هي تعيش في كل أنواع المواطن ، من السهول المفتوحة إلى الغابات و الصحاري الصخرية . تعيش كناعر الأشجار في مناطق الغابات الجبلية و النائية (البعيدة) و هي تكيفت على الحياة في الأشجار . و هي على خلاف الكناعر الأخرى لا تستطيع أن تنتقل بسرعة كبيرة على الأرض.

اليربوع

يعيش اليربوع في كل أنحاء آسيا و شمال إفريقيا . يعيش هذا الحيوان في مناخات الصحراء الحارة و هو منتشر (شائع) في الصحراء السورية . يوجد هناك ٢٥ نوعاً مختلفاً من اليربوع و هي متكيفة بشكل خاص للعيش في المناخات الشديدة الجفاف لها أرجل أمامية قصيرة جداً و رجلان خلفيتان تمكنها من الوثب بسرعة فوق الأرض للفرار من المفترسات . إنها حيوانات ذات نشاط ليلي (ليلية) ، أي أنها تنام خلال النهار .

2- Read the article again and answer these questions.

a- How are penguins and kangaroos different from many other animals?

- They have adapted to life in several different habitats.

b- What do all penguins have in common?

- All penguins live in the southern hemisphere.

c- In what ways have jerboas adapted to their environment?

- They have very short front legs and long back legs which enable them to hop quickly and escape predators.

d- What kind of climate do jerboas live in?

- warm, desert climates

e- Define a marsupial.

- Marsupials are carried by their mother in a pouch after they are born.

3- Match these words from the article with their meanings.

يتكيف	a. adapt	6 change to be better suited to a situation
نصف الكرة الأرضية	b. hemisphere	1 one half of the Earth – southern or northern
البيئة	c. environment	2 the place or conditions where animals live
جبل جليدي	d. iceberg	8 large block of ice that floats in the sea
سهل	e. plain	7 large area of flat land, usually without trees
جراب	f. pouch	4 bag or pocket of skin
بعيد	g. remote	3 far from civilisation or populated areas
إقليم	h. terrain	5 type of landscape

Vocabulary**1. Answer the questions a–e with words from this list. You will need to use some of the words more than once.**

birds mammals reptiles

- Which group of animals feed their young with milk? **a mammals**
- Which two groups of animals lay eggs? **b reptiles and birds**
- Which group of animals have dry skin and cold blood? **c reptiles**
- Which group of animals can fly? **d birds (and bats, which are mammals)**
- Which two groups of animals have warm blood? **e birds and mammals**

2. What do these groups of animals have in common? Start your answers like this:

They can all ... They are all ... They all have ...

- Bat - eagle - owl **They can all fly. / They all have wings.**
- Snake - parrot - turtle **They all lay eggs.**
- Mouse - bat camel **They are all mammals.**
- Lizard - turtle - snake **They are all reptiles.**
- Vulture - rabbit - eagle **They all have warm blood.**

1- Complete these sentences with the present passive form of the verbs in brackets.

- Birds' nests **are often built** (*often build*) at the top of trees where the eggs will be safe.
- Many nests **are made** (*make*) from grass, twigs or feathers.
- In some countries, the nests of rare birds **are protected** (*protect*) by law.
- If the nests of rare birds **are damaged** (*damage*), or their eggs **are stolen** (*steal*), the people who do the damage have to pay a large fine.

2- Rewrite these sentences, changing the verbs in italics from the active to the passive or from the passive to the active.

a. Throughout history people <i>have hunted</i> elephants for their tusks.	Throughout history elephants have been hunted for their tusks.
b. Elephants <i>have been prevented</i> from migrating to find food and water.	People have prevented elephants from migrating to find food and water.
c. People <i>have turned</i> their natural habitats into farmland or building land.	Their / Elephants' natural habitats have been turned into farmland or building land.
d. Elephants <i>have changed</i> the natural environment.	The natural environment has been changed by elephants.
e. Elephants <i>make</i> paths through the areas where they live and other animals <i>have used</i> these.	Paths are made by elephants through the areas where they live and these have been used by other animals.

3- Complete this article about tree kangaroos with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. The verbs may be active or passive and may be in the simple, continuous or perfect forms.

Tree kangaroos, which (1) **are found** (find) only in the rainforests of Australia and West Papua, are in danger of becoming extinct for two main reasons. Firstly, they (2) **are hunted / have been hunted are being hunted** (hunt) for their meat and fur, and secondly their natural habitat (3) **is being destroyed / has been destroyed** (destroy) by human activities such as mining and farming. For several years, the Tree Kangaroo Conservation Programme (4) **has worked / has been working** (work) hard to protect a particular species, Matschie's tree kangaroo, which (5) **lives** (live) only on the northeast coast of Papua New Guinea. As part of their work, special protected wildlife areas (6) **have been created** (create) by the organisation, and the people who live here (7) **have been taught** (teach) how to protect tree kangaroos and other rare animals in their region.

إن كناغر الأشجار و التي توجد فقط في غابات استراليا المطرية و غرب بابوا معرضة لخطر الانقراض لسببين رئيسيين. الأول أنه يتم صيدها للحومها و فراءها ، و الثاني أن موطنها الطبيعي تم تدميره / يتم تدميره من قبل النشاطات البشرية كالتعدين و الزراعة. لسنوات عديدة كان برنامج حماية كناغر الأشجار يعمل / عمل لحماية نوع (فصيلة) محدد و هو كناغر شجرة ماتشي الذي يعيش فقط على الساحل الشمالي الشرقي لبابوا نيو غينيا. كجزء من عملها ، تم إنشاء مناطق حياة برية محمية خاصة من قبل المنظمة كما تم تعليم الناس الذين يعيشون هنا كيف يحمون كناغر الأشجار و الحيوانات النادرة الأخرى في منطقتهم.

Essays: presenting both sides of an argument

1- Read this essay on the pros and cons of keeping animals in zoos. Is the writer of the essay for or against zoos? What is your own opinion? Why?

The arguments for and against zoos

Zoos exist all over the world because people want to see animals that they cannot see in their own country. They have always been popular, especially with children. However, some people believe that they are unnatural habitats and that keeping animals in zoos is cruel. In this essay, I will discuss some of the arguments for and against zoos.

I will start by considering two arguments in favour of zoos. First of all, many people, including environmentalists, believe that zoos help to protect animals which are endangered. In zoos all around the world, rare animals are bred so they increase in number and are saved from extinction. In China, numbers of the endangered giant panda have begun to increase following successful breeding in zoos. Eventually animals can be set free to live in the wild again. Secondly, zoos are educational. People who visit zoos can observe unusual animals up close and learn about their behaviour.

I will now move on to the arguments against zoos. The main objection to zoos is that it is unnatural for wild animals to be kept in captivity. They often have to live in small cages where they cannot move about freely. Another argument against zoos is that they may be located in places where the climate is very different from the climate of the animal's country of origin.

Personally, I do not have strong feelings about zoos. I believe that they can help to protect and preserve endangered species, but I also think that it is wrong to force animals to live in unnatural conditions simply so that curious human beings can stare at them.

النقاشات المؤيدة و المعارضة لحدائق الحيوان
إن حدائق الحيوان موجودة في كل أنحاء العالم لأن الناس يريدون أن يروا الحيوانات التي لا يستطيعون أن يروها في بلادهم الخاصة . لطالما كانت حدائق الحيوان رائجة و خاصة بالنسبة للأطفال . على كل حال فإن بعض الناس يعتقدون أنها مواطن غير طبيعية و أن احتجاز الحيوانات في حدائق الحيوان عمل وحشي . في هذه المقالة سوف (ناقش) أتناول بعض النقاشات المؤيدة و المعارضة لحدائق الحيوان.

سوف أبدأ بدراسة (التفكير ب) مسألتين لصالح حدائق الحيوان . قبل كل شيء ، يعتقد العديد من الناس بمن فيهم دعاة البيئة أن حدائق الحيوان تساعد في حماية الحيوانات المهددة . في حدائق الحيوان عبر العالم يتم استيلاء الحيوانات النادرة لكي يزداد عددها و تُنقذ من الانقراض . في الصين بدأت دببة الباندا الضخمة المهددة بالانقراض بالازدياد بعد عمليات استيلاء ناجحة في حدائق الحيوان . و في النهاية يمكن أن تُطلق الحيوانات لتعيش في البرية مجدداً . ثانياً ، إن حدائق الحيوان تثقيفية . بإمكان الناس الذين يزورون حدائق الحيوان أن يراقبوا الحيوانات غير المألوفة عن كثب و يتعلموا عن سلوكها (تصرفاتها) .

سوف أنتقل الآن إلى الجدل المضاد (المعارض) لحدائق الحيوان . المعارضة الرئيسية لحدائق الحيوان هي أنه من غير الطبيعي بالنسبة للحيوانات البرية أن (تحتجز) تبقى في الأسر . و غالباً ما يتوجب عليها أن تعيش في أقفاص صغيرة حيث لا تستطيع أن تتجول بحرية . نقطة (جدال - نقاش) أخرى معارضة لحدائق الحيوان هو أنه يمكن أن توجد هذه الحدائق في أماكن حيث المناخ مختلف جداً عن مناخ البلد الأصلي للحيوان . شخصياً ، ليس عندي مشاعر قوية تجاه حدائق الحيوان . و أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تساعد في حماية و الحفاظ على الفصائل المهددة . و لكنني أعتقد أيضاً أنه من الخاطئ إرغام الحيوانات على العيش في ظروف غير طبيعية ببساطة ليتمكن البشر الفضوليين من التحديق إليها .

3. The essay is written in quite formal language. Match these formal words and phrases from the essay with their meanings.

a. consider	6 examine and discuss
b. in favour of	4 for / on the side of
c. observe	1 see / watch
d. objection	5 argument against
e. keep in captivity	7 prevent from escaping
f. located	2 placed / situated
g. country of origin	3 place where something (an animal) is from

Write a composition expressing your ideas about zoos

There are heated debates about the lives that animals lead in zoos. On the first hand , Capturing animals destroys their way of life. Moreover, animals in zoos suffer from negative psychological effects since they're not where they should be. However, Zoos are crucial to protect endangered species because some animals are being hunted for a lot of reasons. Zoos can act as safe havens for these animals. I believe zoos are important to save some endangered animals.

هناك جدالات حامية حول الحياة التي تعيشها الحيوانات في حدائق الحيوان . من الناحية الأولى ، إن الإمساك بالحيوانات يدمر نمط حياتها . علاوةً على ذلك ، الحيوانات المحبوسة في حدائق الحيوان تعاني من آثار نفسية سيئة حيث أنها ليست في المكان الذي يفترض أن تكون فيه . على كل حال ، حدائق الحيوان ضرورية لحماية الفصائل المهددة لأن بعض الحيوانات يتم صيدها لأسباب كثيرة . يمكن أن تلعب حدائق الحيوان دور الملاذ الآمن لتلك الحيوانات . أنا أعتقد أن حدائق الحيوان هامةً من أجل حماية بعض الحيوانات المهددة .

Activity book - p 37**Write about the arguments for and against keeping household pets .**

keeping a pet has some advantages. First, a pet can be a good friend and their loyalty is unmatched. For example, you and your family feel safe if you have a dog. Your child always has a companion and can learn to be more responsible. On the other hand, owning a pet has some drawbacks, especially if one of the family has allergies. Besides, pets like dogs or cats shed their body hair. I think keeping a pet is a great responsibility .

إن اقتناء حيوان أليف له بعض المزايا . أولاً ، يمكن للحيوان الأليف أن يكون صديقاً جيداً و إخلاصه لا مثيل له . على سبيل المثال أنت و عائلتك تشعر بالأمان إذا كنت تمتلك كلباً . سيكون لدى ابنك مرافق و يمكن أن يتعلم أن يكون أكثر مسؤوليةً . و من ناحية أخرى ، فإن امتلاك حيوان أليف له بعض المساوئ ، و خاصةً إذا كان أحد افراد العائلة يعاني من الحساسية . بالإضافة إلى أن الحيوانات الأليفة مثل القطط و الكلاب تنسل شعر أجسامها . أعتقد ان اقتناء حيوان أليف مسؤولية كبيرة .

Write about the arguments for and against protecting wild animals .

Wildlife conservation is the attempt to protect endangered animals. I will start my article by considering the disadvantages. First, protecting wild animals requires high cost and conservation areas and this interferes with the economic vitality. On the other hand, animals are beneficial for us. For instance, a lot of medicines have been derived from animals. I think, we must protect wild animals because they are parts of a very complex system that sustains us .

إن المحافظة على الحياة البرية هي محاولة حماية الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض . سأتبدأ هذه المقالة بأخذ المساوي بعين الاعتبار . أولاً ، إن حماية الحيوانات البرية يتطلب تكلفة عالية و مناطق حماية و هذا يتدخل بموضوع الحيوية الاقتصادية . و من ناحية أخرى ، الحيوانات ذات فائدة لنا . على سبيل المثال ، الكثير من الأدوية اشتقت من مواد كيميائية تنتجها الحيوانات . أنا أعتقد بأننا يجب أن نحمي الحيوانات البرية لأنها أجزاء من نظام حيوي معقد يعيلنا .

Activity book - p 37**Write about the arguments for and against eating meat .**

Meat has been blamed for many sorts of diseases. There is no doubt that eating meat creates health concerns for the consumers. Meat is relatively high in fat and cholesterol, which are linked to increased risk of cardiovascular disease. Moreover, people who eat large amounts of meat are more likely to develop diabetes. On the other hand, meat contains high quality protein and nutrients. We also function best eating both plants and animals. I think we should eat meat moderately.

لقد تم لوم اللحم لعدة انواع من الأمراض . لا يوجد شك أن تناول اللحوم يخلق اهتمامات صحية لدى المستهلكين . اللحم غني نسبياً بالدهون و الكولسترول ، و هي مرتبطة بخطر متزايد من تصلب الأوعية الدموية . علاوة على ذلك ، فإن الناس الذين يأكلون كميات كبيرة من اللحوم هم عرضة أكثر لأن يطوروا (يصابوا ب) مرض السكري. و من ناحية أخرى ، إن اللحم يحتوي بروتين عالي الجودة و مغذيات . كما أننا نعمل بشكل أفضل إذا تناولنا كلاً من اللحوم (الحيوانات) و النباتات . أعتقد أننا يجب أن نتناول اللحوم بشكل معتدل .

UNIT 6

Activity book - Progress Test 2

P - 38

Reading

1- Complete the article below with words from this list. Use each word only once.**be because been for from if is of on this to too****Greenhouse gases: good or bad?**

We usually think that greenhouse gases are harmful, but without these gases the climate of the Earth would be like the climate of Mars: (1) **too** cold for human beings to survive. Greenhouse gases, which include carbon dioxide and methane, keep the heat of the sun in and prevent our planet (2) **from** freezing.

However, (3) **for** the last 200 years people have (4) **been** using enormous quantities of fossil fuels like coal, gas and oil. When these fuels are burnt, they produce large amounts of carbon dioxide and (5) **this** keeps more of the sun's heat in. The result is that the temperature of the Earth (6) **is** rising year by year. This is leading (7) **to** more extreme weather: high winds and heavy rain, which produce storms and floods.

The problem is made worse by the fact that we are destroying the world's rainforests. Trees naturally consume carbon dioxide, but (8) **because** there are fewer trees, more carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.

Because (9) **of** the increase in the Earth's temperature, the ice at the north and south poles is melting, and this is causing sea levels to rise. Eventually, many areas of land which are now (10) **on** the coast will (11) **be** flooded. Leading scientists are warning that (12) **if** the authorities don't introduce new laws to reduce greenhouse gas increases now, the results could be disastrous for life on Earth.

غازات الدفيئة (البيت البلاستيكي) : جيدة أم ضارة ؟

نحن دائماً نعتقد أن غازات الدفيئة ضارة ، ولكن بدون هذه الغازات فإن مناخ الأرض سيصبح مثل مناخ المريخ : يصبح بارداً جداً لينجو (يعيش) فيه البشر . إن غازات الدفيئة و التي تتضمن ثاني أكسيد الكربون و الميثان تحافظ على حرارة الشمس و تمنع الكوكب من التجمد .

بأي حال فإنه طوال المئتي سنة الماضية كان الناس يستخدمون كميات هائلة من الوقود الأحفوري (وقود المستحاثات) كالفحم الحجري ، الغاز و النفط . عندما يحرق هذا الوقود يصدر كميات ضخمة من ثاني أكسيد الكربون و هذا يُبقي (يحبس) المزيد من حرارة الشمس . و تكون النتيجة أن حرارة الأرض تزداد عاماً وراء عام . و هذا الأمر يقود إلى طقس أكثر تطرفاً : رياح عاتية (شديدة) و أمطار غزيرة و التي تنتج العواصف و الفيضانات .

تصبح المشكلة أسوأ بسبب حقيقة أننا ندمر الغابات المطرية في العالم . إن الأشجار تستهلك بشكل طبيعي ثاني أكسيد الكربون ، ولكن لأن الأشجار تصبح أقل فإنه يتم إطلاق المزيد من ثاني أكسيد الكربون في الجو . و بسبب ارتفاع حرارة الأرض فإن الجليد في القطبين الشمالي و الجنوبي يذوب ، الأمر الذي يسبب ارتفاع منسوب البحر . و في النهاية فإن العديد من مناطق الأرض التي هي حالياً على الساحل سوف تغمر .

و يحذر أبرز العلماء أنه إذا لم تسن (تشرع) السلطات قوانين جديدة للحد من ازدياد غاز الدفيئة الآن ، فإن النتيجة قد تكون كارثية على الحياة على الأرض .

2- Read the article again. Are these statements True or False?

- a- Without greenhouse gases human beings couldn't live on Earth. **a True**
- b- Human beings have been using fossil fuels for more than two hundred years. **b True**
- c- The temperature of the Earth is increasing because the sun is getting hotter. **c False: The temperature of the Earth is increasing because more of the sun's heat is being kept in by greenhouse gases.**
- d- Flooding is an example of extreme weather. **d False: Flooding is the result of extreme weather like high winds and heavy rain.**
- e- Trees and forests produce greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide. **e False: Trees and forests consume carbon dioxide. e False: Trees and forests consume carbon dioxide.**
- f- Sea levels will rise if the ice at the poles melts. **f True**
- g- Scientists want every individual on Earth to take immediate action. **g False: Scientists want authorities to take immediate action.**

Grammar and vocabulary**1- Complete sentences a-g with one of these words or phrases. You will need to use some of them twice.**

Because in order to so that in order not to

- a. In the future, sea levels will rise **because** the polar ice is melting.
- b. People are cutting down forests **in order to** have more land for growing food.
- c. Many people recycle their rubbish **in order not to** use up the world's resources.
- d. Scientists are trying to produce new fuels **so that** people can continue to use their cars without damaging the environment.
- e. Some people are moving out of their homes on the coast **in order to** escape future floods.
- f. We should stop burning coal and oil **in order not to** cause more global warming.
- g. Scientists are worried about climate change **because** it is a threat to life on Earth.

2- Choose the correct modal verb in these conversations.

- a. A Did you speak to Mahmoud this morning? He said he was going to phone you.
B He (*can't have phoned* / *must have phoned*) me this morning. I was at home and I would have heard the telephone.
- b. A When are you next in town?
B I (*may be* / *must be*) coming next month. If I do, I'll let you know.
- c. A I've looked everywhere for the letter I wrote to my uncle.
B Don't worry – if it's not here, you (*can't have posted* / *must have posted it*).
- d. A You (*might be* / *must be*) exhausted. You've been working very hard recently.
B I'm all right, thanks.
- e. A I've tried to contact Alia, but she isn't at home.
B You never know – she (*might have forgotten* / *can't have forgotten*) the meeting.

3- Complete these sentences about the city of Damascus using the active or passive forms of the verbs in brackets. Verbs may be present or past.

- a- Damascus **is located** (located) in the south-west of Syria, near the Anti-Lebanon Mountains.
- b- The city has a long history and **was occupied** (occupy) by many peoples before becoming the Syrian capital.
- c- Damascus is a popular tourist destination; many thousands of people **visit** (visit) the city to see historical monuments from different periods of history.
- d- The famous Hejaz train station **transports** (transport) passengers to Amman, Jordan.
- e- A huge variety of items **is sold** (sold) in the souks of Damascus, including fabrics, metal goods and jewellery.
- f- In recent years many companies **have built** (build) their offices in the new part of the city.

4- Choose the correct words in these sentences.

- a. If you are very lucky, you may see the giant panda in its natural (*display* / *habitat*).
- b. Most of Africa has a very hot, dry (*climate* / *weather*).
- c. Some plants grow well here even though the (*dust* / *soil*) is poor and it hardly ever rains.
- d. Ali doesn't want a (*permanent* / *temporary*) job – he wants a serious career as an engineer.
- e. We must do something about climate change to (*protect* / *survive*) our way of life.
- f. We thought the restaurant bill was too high. We were right – the waiter had (*overcharged* / *undercharged*) us.
- g. I'm not going to throw my mobile phone away. I'm going to send it to another country where it can be (*misused* / *reused*).

5- Answer these questions.

- a Which of these is a mammal? eagle / lizard / **mouse** / snake
 b Which of these is not a bird? **deer** / eagle / owl / vulture
 c Which of these is not a fruit? banana / **carrot** / lemon / orange
 d Which of these is not a part of a plant? leaf / **zoo** / root / shoot

6- Write the correct preposition in the gap in the following sentences. You will need to use one of the words twice.

for in of on

- a- Some people are not aware **of** the difference between a fruit and a vegetable.
 b- I'm really interested **in** the history of my family.
 c- Apples and bananas are dependent for their survival **on** greenhouse gases.
 d- Modern Damascus is built **on** the site of many ancient civilisations.
 e- Damascus is famous **for** its historical monuments.

P – 41

Activity book P - 41

Write a leaflet publicizing the problem of climate change and suggesting 2 or 3 ways in which ordinary people can reduce the amount of energy they use .

Reducing greenhouse gases is the key to solving global climate change. There are many things we can do to help solving this widespread issue. First, we have to adopt energy – saving habits for example, we can buy energy - efficient products. We can also switch to green power and recycling. By properly insulating your home, you ensure that heat stays in. I think everyone can help by conserving energy at home and at work .

إن تخفيض غازات الدفيئة هو المفتاح لحل مشكلة تبدل المناخ العالمية . هناك عدة أشياء نستطيع ان نقوم بها لكي نساعد في حل هذه المشكلة العالمية . أولاً ، يجب علينا أن نتبنى عادات صديقة للبيئة على سبيل المثال ، نستطيع أن نشترى منتجات موفرة للطاقة . و بإمكاننا أيضاً الانتقال للطاقة النظيفة (الخضراء) و إعادة التدوير . و بعزل منزلك بشكل جيد أنت تضمن أن الحرارة تبقى في الداخل. أنا أعتقد بأن كل شخص يمكن ان يساعد و ذلك عبر توفير الطاقة في المنزل أو في العمل .

UNIT 7
Healthy life

P – 42 MODULE 3: Lifestyles

1- Match these words and phrases with their meanings.

a. Alert	5 clear-headed / awake
b. Concentrate	7 give all your attention to a subject
c. (be) deprived of something	1 not having any or enough of something
d. Irritable	3 easily annoyed
e. Moody	2 easily feeling gloomy for no good reason
f. Recharge	4 renew
g. Shallow	6 not deep

How much sleep do we need?

- How much sleep do you need each night? Do you usually get this amount? Can you catch up on sleep you have missed at night by sleeping at other times, or do you find it difficult to sleep during the day? The rest of this article will give you some useful information and advice.
- The amount of sleep human beings need varies from individual to individual. We know that most adults need about 8 hours of sleep a day, but this number can vary greatly; 'short sleepers' may need only 5 hours, whereas 'long sleepers' may need 9 to 10 hours. Babies need about 16 hours a day while many teenagers need an average of 9 hours. As people get older, they tend to need less sleep; some elderly people wake up early in the morning and cannot sleep for more than five or six hours. Exactly how much we need depends on several factors, including our age, our daily routine, the quality of our sleep and our genetic make-up.
- How do we know if we are getting enough sleep? In general, if you feel drowsy during the day, you need more sleep. You may think that you are sleeping for long enough, but these are some of the signs that you may need more:
 - You cannot concentrate at school or at work.
 - You find it difficult to get up in the morning.
 - You are moody or irritable; you have memory problems.
- So why is it important that we get enough sleep? Sleep provides our bodies with a chance to switch off. This allows us to recharge our mental and physical batteries and be ready for each new day. If we have slept well, we should wake up in the morning feeling alert and rested. People who have been deprived of sleep find it difficult to perform the simplest activities. For example, motorists who fall asleep at the wheel are responsible for thousands of traffic accidents every year.
- How we sleep also affects us. When we fall asleep, our sleep can be deep and restful or light and shallow. Shallow sleepers wake up still feeling tired, while deep sleepers wake up refreshed.

إلى كم نحتاج من النوم؟

- إلى كم نحتاج من النوم كل ليلة؟ هل تحصل عادةً على هذا المقدار؟ هل تستطيع أن تعوض النوم الذي فوّته في الليل بالنوم في أوقات أخرى، أم هل تجد صعوبة بالنوم خلال النهار؟ ستعطيك بقية هذه المقالة بعض المعلومات والنصائح المفيدة.
- يختلف مقدار النوم الذي يحتاجه البشر من فرد إلى آخر. نحن نعرف أن معظم الراشدين يحتاجون حوالي ٨ ساعات من النوم في اليوم و لكن هذا الرقم يمكن أن يختلف بشكل كبير، فقد يحتاج ذوي النوم القصير إلى ٥ ساعات فقط، بينما قد يحتاج ذوي النوم الطويل من ٩ إلى ١٠ ساعات. يحتاج الأطفال إلى ١٦ ساعة من النوم في اليوم. بينما يحتاج العديد من المراهقين معدلاً وسطياً من ٩ ساعات. عندما يكبر الناس يميلون لأن يحتاجوا إلى نوم أقل [يميلون لأن يناموا أقل]. يستيقظ بعض كبار السن باكراً في الصباح ولا يستطيعون أن يناموا أكثر من ٥ إلى ٦ ساعات. ما نحتاجه بالضبط يعتمد على عدة عوامل، تتضمن عمرنا، روتيننا اليومي، جودة نومنا وتركيبنا (بنيّتنا) الوراثي.
- كيف نعرف (إذا كنا) أننا نحصل على ما يكفي من النوم؟ إذا كنت تشعر بالنعاس خلال النهار، فأنت تحتاج إلى المزيد من النوم. قد تظن أنك تحصل على قسط كاف من النوم، و لكن فيما يلي بعض الإشارات التي قد تحتاجها أكثر (لمعرفة ذلك).
 - لا تستطيع أن تركز في المدرسة أو في العمل.
 - تجد صعوبة في النهوض في الصباح.
 - تكون مزاجياً أو سريع الانفعال. يكون عندك مشاكل في الذاكرة.
- لماذا من المهم إذاً أن نحصل على قسط كاف من النوم؟ يزود النوم أجسادنا بالفرصة للاستراحة. وهذا يسمح لنا بإعادة شحن بطارياتنا الجسدية والعقلية ونكون جاهزين لكل يوم جديد. إذا نمنا بشكل جيد، يجب أن نستيقظ في الصباح يقظين (منتعشين) ومرتاحين. يجد الناس المحرومين (الذين حُرّموا) من النوم صعوبة في إنجاز أبسط النشاطات. فعلى سبيل المثال إن السائقين الذين ينامون خلف عجلة القيادة مسؤولين عن آلاف الحوادث المرورية كل عام.
- طريقة (كيفية) نومنا تؤثر علينا. عندما نغط في النوم يمكن أن يكون نومنا عميقاً ومريحاً أو خفيفاً و سطحيّاً. يستيقظ ذوي النوم الخفيف (السطحي) وهم لا يزالون يشعرون بالتعب بينما يستيقظ ذوي النوم العميق منتعشين.

3. Read the article again and complete these sentences with a word or phrase.

- Adults and teenagers need a lot less sleep than **babies**.
- It is **elderly (old) people** who seem to need the least sleep.
- People who do not get enough sleep may find it difficult to **concentrate** at school or work.
- Sleep lets people recharge their **batteries**

VOCABULARY**1- Choose the correct form of the verb *make* or *do* to complete these conversations.**

- A Could I **make** a suggestion?

B Of course.

A You should think carefully before you **make** your decision.

B You're right. If I **made** a mistake now, I could **do** a lot of damage to a lot of people.
- A Are you at university?

B Yes, I'm **doing** research into sleep deprivation.

A What does that involve?

B I have to **do** experiments on people who have had little or no sleep.
- A Where do you **do** your shopping?

B The little shop round the corner. They sell most of the things I need.

2- Choose the correct phrasal verbs to complete these sentences.

- You shouldn't try to (do away with / **do without**) sleep. You need at least eight hours a night.
- He said everything was okay, but that was just a story he (made out / **made up**) to stop me from worrying.
- You'd better (do out / **do up**) your boots tightly to stop the sand getting in.

P – 44 Grammar**1- Report the questions and answers in these short conversations.**

a.

Deema: What are you doing at the weekend?	Deema asked Ruba what she was doing at the weekend.
Ruba: I'm going out with my parents	Ruba said / replied (that) she was going out with her parents.

b.

Deema: Where are you going?	Deema asked Ruba where she was going.
Ruba: I'm going to visit my cousins in the next town.	Ruba said / replied that she was going to visit her cousins in the next town.

c.

Bashaar: Can you take me to the airport tomorrow?	Bashaar asked Rakan if he could take him to the airport the following day.
Rakan: What time do you have to be there?	Rakan asked Bashaar what time he had to be there.
Bashaar: I have to be there at four o'clock in the afternoon.	Bashaar replied that he had to be there at four o'clock in the afternoon.

d.

Laila: Did you enjoy your holiday?	Laila asked Fadia if she had enjoyed her holiday.
Fadia: Yes, it was very relaxing.	Fadia said that it had been very relaxing.
Laila: When did you get back?	Laila asked (Fadia) when she had got back.
Fadia: Very late last night – our plane was delayed.	Fadia replied that she had got back very late the previous night because their plane had been delayed.

e.

Hani: Have you seen my briefcase?	Hani asked Amer if he had seen his briefcase.
Amer: No, I haven't. When did you last have it?	Amer said he hadn't and asked Hani when he had last had it.
Hani: I brought it home from work yesterday, but I haven't seen it since.	Hani said he had brought it home from work the previous day, and added that he hadn't seen it since.

2- What were these people's actual words?

a. She asked me if I'd got the time.	<i>Have you got the time?</i>
b. He said he'd slept for ten hours the previous night.	<i>I slept for ten hours last night.</i>
c. Hani asked his mother if he could go out with his friends.	<i>(Please) Can I go out with my friends?</i>
d. Waleed asked whether Omar wanted to go swimming with him.	<i>Would you like to come (go) swimming with me?</i>
e. Hiba said she was enjoying her new job.	<i>I'm enjoying my new job.</i>

P – 45 Writing

1. Paragraphs A-C are the first paragraphs of three articles. Match each article with the most suitable title and one of the illustrations. There is one title you do not need to use.

A- Keep moving to keep fit

Are you getting enough exercise? Most people these days agree that regular exercise is an important part of a healthy lifestyle, especially for people who spend most of their time at work sitting in offices. Some people find exercise boring so they make excuses to avoid doing it, but in this article I am going to suggest a few types of exercise which everyone will find enjoyable.

A. واصل الحركة لتبقى رشيقاً .
هل تتدرب كفاية ؟ (هل تحصل على ما يكفي من التدريب ؟) يتفق معظم الناس هذه الأيام على أن التمرين المنتظم جزء هام من نمط حياة صحي ، و خاصة للناس الذين يمضون معظم وقتهم في العمل جالسين في المكاتب. يجد بعض الناس أن التمرين ممل لذلك يختلقون الأعذار لتجنبه . و لكن في هذه المقالة سوف أقترح عدة نماذج من التمارين سيجدها الجميع ممتعة .

B- Enjoy your food and stay healthy

How healthy is your diet? In the modern world, experts frequently tell us that what we eat affects how healthy we are and how long we live. But most people like food and want to eat the things they enjoy. In this article I am going to suggest how you can eat the food you enjoy and still have a healthy diet.

A. استمتع بطعامك و ابق بصحة جيدة .
إلى أي حد طعامك (حميتك) صحي ؟ في العالم المعاصر يقول لنا الخبراء بشكل متكرر أن ما نأكله يؤثر على مدى صحتنا و على كم نعيش و لكن معظم الناس يحبون الطعام و يريدون أن يأكلوا الأشياء التي يستمتعون بها . في هذه المقالة سوف أقترح كيف تستطيع أن تأكل الطعام الذي تستمتع به و يبقى طعامك صحياً .

C- Thinking is good for you

One of the factors which affect how long people live and how much they enjoy their old age is 'brain activity'. Scientists have shown that people who keep their brains busy tend to live long, happy lives compared with those who do not. In this article, I am going to suggest some interesting and enjoyable ways in which you can keep your brain active.

D- التفكير مفيد (جيد) لك .

أحد العوامل التي تؤثر بكم يعيش الناس و بمدى تمتعهم بكبر سنهم هو 'النشاط العقلي' . لقد أظهر العلماء أن الناس الذين يبغون عقولهم منشغلة يميلون للعيش حياة سعيدة أطول بالمقارنة مع هؤلاء الذين لا يفكرون كثيراً . في هذه المقالة سوف أقترح بعض الطرق المسلية و الممتعة التي تستطيع بها أن تحافظ على دماغك نشيطاً .

Activity book - Page 45-46

What do you do to keep healthy ? Do you have the best balance of habits and activities ? How can you improve your health ? Make what you write interesting to people of all ages .

Finding balance in health and wellness might not be as easy because we are under more stress than ever before. I think that sleeping and getting up early are very important things we can do for health. Besides, eating breakfast with the family keeps the bonds strong and positively impacts our health. Moreover, meditation and yoga increase memory and help balance the mind. If you do these things, you become happier and healthier every day.

إيجاد التوازن في الصحة و العافية قد لا يكون بهذه السهولة لأننا تحت ضغط (إجهاد) أكثر من أي وقت مضى. أعتقد أن النوم و الاستيقاظ باكراً هما أمران مهمان جداً من أجل الصحة. الذهاب للخارج في نزهة في الطبيعة لعدة دقائق يمكن أن يكون عظيماً لصحتك. بالإضافة إلى ذلك ، فإن تناول الإفطار مع العائلة يحافظ على علاقات قوية و يؤثر بشكل إيجابي على صحتنا. و أيضاً الخروج مع الأصدقاء و فعل الأشياء سوياً جيد جداً. علاوة على ذلك ، فإن التأمل و اليوغا يعززان الذاكرة و يساعدان في توازن الدماغ. إذا قمت بفعل هذه الأمور، ستصبح أكثر سعادةً و صحةً كل يوم .

Unit – 8

Urban and rural life

P – 47 Reading

MODULE 3: Lifestyles

1- As you read the article 'Capital Cities', answer these questions for each city.**a. What is the population of these cities?**

- Damascus 5 million; Brasilia 2.5 million

b. What buildings are characteristic of capital cities?

- government offices; embassies; banks; financial institutions

c. What are the differences between Damascus and Brasilia?

- Unlike Damascus, Brasilia is not the main cultural or economic centre of Brazil. Damascus is the most populous city in Syria, while the population of Brasilia represents only a tiny fraction of the population of Brazil. Damascus has been inhabited for thousands of years and has a rich history whereas Brasilia is a completely new city and was built in the 1950s.

Capital Cities

The capital city of a country is very often its greatest city, with the largest population and the most important administrative buildings. Capital cities house government offices, as well as embassies from other countries. They are also financial centres, containing national and international banks and other financial institutions.

Damascus is no different from other capital cities in this respect – it is the seat of government and the economic and cultural centre of Syria. With a population of around 5 million people, Damascus is the biggest city in Syria. The city has a rich history, and is considered the oldest city in the world. It has been continually inhabited for thousands of years. The commercial and administrative centre of the city is located in the modern part of the city, outside the ancient walls.

Brasilia, the capital city of Brazil, is both similar to and different from Damascus. Like Damascus, it is an administrative centre and contains the key political buildings and institutions. However, unlike Damascus, Brasilia is not the major cultural or economic centre of Brazil. The population of Brasilia is only around 2.5 million people, which is a tiny fraction of the huge Brazilian population.

Built in the late 1950s, it is a new city and has only been the capital of Brazil since 1960. It took over from Rio de Janeiro, which remains a major economic and cultural centre, as well as having a population of many millions more. Brasilia is a very modern city and because it is so new, planners were able to strictly regulate its layout. It is divided into sectors, with specific zones for business, industry, government and residential areas.

العواصم

عاصمة بلد ما غالباً ما تكون أكبر مدينة فيه و فيها عدد السكان الأكبر و معظم الأبنية الإدارية الهامة . تضم (تتضمن - تحتوي) العاصمة مكاتب الحكومة بالإضافة إلى سفارات البلدان الأخرى . و العواصم أيضاً مراكز مالية تضم بنوكاً وطنية و عالمية و مؤسسات مالية أخرى .

لا تختلف دمشق عن العواصم الأخرى في هذا الشأن (الخصوص) - إنها مقر الحكومة و المركز الاقتصادي و الثقافي لسوريا . بتعداد سكان يبلغ حوالي ٥ ملايين إنسان ، تعتبر دمشق المدينة الأكبر في سوريا . للمدينة تاريخ غني و تُعتبر أقدم مدينة في العالم . إنها مأهولة (مسكونة) منذ آلاف السنين . يقع مركز المدينة الإداري و التجاري في الجزء الحديث من المدينة ، خارج الأسوار (الجدران) القديمة .

إن برازيليا عاصمة البرازيل مشابهة لدمشق و مختلفة عنها . مثل دمشق ، هي مركز إداري و تضم المباني السياسية الرئيسية و المؤسسات . و بأي حال على عكس دمشق ، إن برازيليا ليست المركز الثقافي و الاقتصادي الرئيسي للبرازيل . عدد سكان برازيليا حوالي ٢.٥ مليون إنسان و هذا جزء صغير جداً فقط من عدد سكان البرازيل الضخم .

لقد بنيت في أواخر خمسينيات القرن العشرين ، إنها مدينة حديثة و أصبحت العاصمة منذ عام ١٩٦٠ فقط . لقد أخذت السلطة من ريو دي جانيرو و التي لا تزال مركزاً ثقافياً و اقتصادياً رئيسياً ، بالإضافة لوجود تعداد سكان فيها أكبر بعدة ملايين . إن برازيليا مدينة عصرية جداً و لأنها حديثة (جديدة) جداً ، كان المصممون قادرين على تنظيم مخططها بشكل تام (دقيق) . إنها مقسمة إلى قطاعات و فيها مناطق محددة للأعمال (الشركات)، المناطق الصناعية ، الحكومية و السكنية .

2- Match these words and phrases from the article with their meanings.

سفارة	a- embassy	6 the offices of the representative of a foreign country
ينظم - يخطط	b- regulate	5 supervise or control
قطاع - منطقة	c- sector	2 a particular part of an area
محدد	d- specific	4 clearly defined
جزء	e- fraction	3 a small amount of something
مؤسسة	f- institution	1 an organisation with an important role in the country

3- Read the first part of the article again and complete these sentences with one of the words from this list.

capital residential government financial industrial administrative

- The **residential** area is where people live.
- Capital** cities contain key **government** buildings such as the parliament.
- Government buildings are often known as **administrative** buildings.
- In Brasilia, if you wanted to build a factory, you would do it in the **industrial** sector.
- Banking and other **financial** institutions are usually based in the capital city.

4- Are these statements about Damascus, Brasilia or both? Answer D, B or both.

- It is the largest city in the country. **D**
- It is an ancient city. **D**
- It is the administrative centre of the country. **Both**
- It is an important cultural centre. **D**
- It only became a capital city during the twentieth century. **B**
- It is a new city. **B**

Vocabulary**1. Complete these sentences with the correct form of the sound words from this list. There are more words than you need.**

bang click drip roar scream splash tick whistle

- The **roar** of a plane woke me up in the night.
- Can you hear that **dripping** noise? Someone must have left a tap on in the bathroom.
- Everyone heard the **splash** when he jumped into the swimming pool.
- A friend of mine is terrified of spiders and **screams** if she sees one close to her.
- Digital clocks don't **tick** like old-fashioned clocks used to.

2. Rewrite these sentences, replacing the underlined phrases with one of those from the box.

far and wide hustle and bustle nearest and dearest odds and ends pick and choose

- Graduates with first class degrees can often select exactly the jobs they want. **pick and choose**
- The country is too quiet for me, I would miss the noise and excitement of the city. **hustle and bustle**
- I tidied my office the other day and found all kinds of different things on my desk. **odds and ends**
- People came from all over the place to see the exhibition. **far and wide**
- We're having a big celebration next week, so we're inviting all our family and close friends. **nearest and dearest**

Grammar Comparing and contrasting

1. Complete these sentences with one of these comparing or contrasting words or phrases. Use each word or phrase once.

instead of in comparison with but whereas

- a- **In comparison with** Seoul in South Korea, Paris, the capital of France, is quite a small city. **Whereas** Seoul has a population of over 10 million people, Paris only has 2 million.
- b- I've decided to learn Chinese **instead of** French at university. Chinese grammar is not too difficult **but** the pronunciation will be very hard for me.

P – 50

2. Match the sentences a-d with the corresponding sentences 1-4 below. Then write new sentences using the word or phrase in brackets

- a/2 Damascus is the largest city in Syria, **but** Brasilia is small compared with cities like Rio de Janeiro.
- b/1 Brasilia is not the major cultural and economic centre of Brazil, **whereas** Damascus is the cultural and economic hub of Syria.
- c/4 Brasilia was designed by an architect in the 20th century, **while** Damascus developed naturally over thousands of years.
- d/3 Brasilia is a very modern city **and although** Damascus is a very old city, there are modern areas with many new buildings.

Writing Describing places to live

1- Match these descriptions A-C with the correct pictures 1-3.

Description A Picture 2

Description B Picture 3

Description C Picture 1

وصف أماكن العيش

<p>A. This architect-designed house has two storeys and is located in a village two kilometres from the sea. It has a tiled roof which provides shady areas on both the ground floor and first floor. The house is surrounded by a colourful garden which has been well looked after. The property overlooks a luxurious swimming pool.</p>	<p>هذا المنزل ذو التصميم الهندسي (المعماري) مؤلف من طبقتين و يقع في قرية تبعد كيلومتريين عن البحر . له سقف قرميدي يؤمن مناطق ظليلة في كل من الطابق الأرضي و الأول . هذا المنزل محاط بحديقة ملونة اعتني بها بشكل جيد . هذا العقار يطل على بركة سباحة فاخرة .</p>
<p>B. This two-storey modern house is situated on the outskirts of a medium-sized town. It is surrounded by a large garden with a lawn, trees, shrubs and hedges. It has a flat roof and there are balconies outside the first floor windows. It is painted white and there are no other houses nearby.</p>	<p>هذا المنزل الحديث (العصري) المؤلف من طبقتين يقع عند أطراف بلدة متوسطة الحجم . إنه محاط بحديقة ضخمة ذات مرج أخضر ، أشجار ، جنبات و سياج . له سقف مسطح و هناك شرفات أمام نوافذ الطابق الأول . هو مطلي باللون الأبيض و لا يوجد أية منازل أخرى بجانبه .</p>
<p>C. This two-storey modern building is located in a residential area in the suburbs of a large city. It has a small garden with recently planted trees and shrubs. The property is surrounded by a low wall which separates it from a quiet street. The house has a flat roof.</p>	<p>يتوضع هذا البناء العصري المؤلف من طابقين في منطقة سكنية عند ضواحي مدينة كبيرة . له حديقة صغيرة و أشجار و جنبات زرعت حديثاً (مؤخراً) . هذا العقار محاط بسور منخفض يفصله عن شارع هادئ . لهذا المنزل سقف مسطح .</p>

2- Read the descriptions again and make lists of the following.

- Words and phrases used to describe where the houses are located Example: ... *is located in a village two kilometres from the sea.*

- **location**

is located in a village two kilometres from the sea) / is situated on the outskirts of a medium-sized town / is located in a residential area in the suburbs of a large city

- Adjectives used to describe the buildings and gardens Example: *architect-designed*

- **description**

(architect-designed) / tiled (roof) / shady / colourful / well looked after / luxurious / two-storey / modern / medium-sized / large / flat (roof) / painted / residential / small / (recently) planted / low (wall) / quiet

- Nouns for different parts of the buildings Example: *(two) storeys*

- **parts of the buildings**

(storeys) / roof / ground floor / first floor / garden / swimming pool / balconies / windows / wall

- Nouns for different natural features Example: *trees*

- **natural features**

(trees) / lawn / shrubs / hedges

Activity Book – P 51**Write a description of a building you know well**

I live in a detached house in the suburbs of a large city. It is a two-storey house with French windows and a tiled roof. The sitting room has a very high ceiling. We have a swimming pool and a barbecue in the garden. We also have some fruit trees. We can eat outside in the summer. I enjoy drinking coffee there in the morning. My house offers privacy because it is surrounded by high walls.

أنا أعيش في منزل منفصل في ضواحي مدينة كبيرة. إنه منزل من طابقين له نوافذ فرنسية و سقف من القرميد. غرفة الجلوس لها سقف مرتفع. المنزل عصري. لدينا بركة سباحة و موقد شواء في الحديقة. و يوجد لدينا بعض أشجار الفواكه أيضاً. نستطيع أن نتناول الطعام في الخارج في الصيف. أنا أستمتع بشرب القهوة هناك في الصباح. يمنح منزلي الخصوصية لأنه محاط بجدران عالية.

Unit – 9
New ways and old

1- Before you read the article below, match these words and phrases with their meanings. You may need to check your ideas in a dictionary.

قطعة فنية مشغولة	a. artefact	1 an object of cultural or historical interest
متمرس – خبير	b. skilled	4 having a special ability or talent
حرفي	c. artisan	5 worker in a skilled trade (usually making items by hand)
العصر البرونزي	d. Bronze Age	3 a period of prehistory when weapons and tools were commonly made of bronze
مزركش – منمق – مزخرف	e. ornate	2 intricately decorated with complex patterns or constructions

2- Read this article about some of the traditional crafts in Syria and answer these questions.

a. Why is there such a variety of historical crafts in Syria?

- Because of its long history of interaction with different civilisations; because of its location at the crossroads of several ancient trading routes.

b. How are these traditional crafts being threatened?

- By globalisation; by cheaper, mass produced goods from abroad.

c. Why are copper artefacts useful to historians?

- They date to the Bronze Age, around 3000 BCE and give historians information about the way ancient people lived

d. Why is it important to preserve the traditions mentioned below?

- Students' own answers

P – 52

Traditional crafts in Aleppo

Syria has undergone a period of modernisation in the last few years, with new buildings and improved transportation services in its cities. Yet it remains an ancient land that has enjoyed involvement and interaction with many different civilisations over the last ten thousand years.

Syria's historical importance and its crucial location at the crossroads of several ancient trading routes mean that a wide variety of crafts have developed. However, the fast pace of globalisation is threatening the skilled local artisans who strive to preserve these wonderful traditions. As cheaper, mass-produced goods are imported from abroad, it is important that people are made aware of these traditional crafts and those who practise them.

In the city of Aleppo there is a market dedicated to protecting hand-made copper goods, to ensure that this ancient craft does not vanish. Copper artefacts have been discovered all over the region. Some of these artefacts date to the Bronze Age, around 3000 BCE. Historians have identified a number of uses for the material including weaponry, jewellery and ornaments. These items give us information about

الحرف التقليدية في حلب

لقد خضعت سوريا لفترة من التحديث (العصرنة) خلال السنوات القليلة الماضية ، وأصبح هناك أبنية حديثة وخدمات مواصلات محسنة في مدنها . ومع ذلك هي تبقى أرضاً قديمة تمتعت بنشاطك و تفاعل العديد من الحضارات المختلفة خلال العشرة آلاف سنة الماضية .

إن أهمية سوريا التاريخية و موقعها الحساس عند تقاطع عدة طرق تجارية قديمة يعني أن تنوعاً واسعاً من الحرف اليدوية قد تطور هناك . على كل حال ، إن سرعة دخول العولمة إلى المنطقة يهدد الحرفيين المحليين المهرة الذين يناضلون للمحافظة على تلك التقاليد الرائعة . و بسبب استيراد السلع الأرخص و المنتجة على نطاق واسع من الخارج ، فإنه من المهم توعية الناس لتلك الحرف التقليدية و لأولئك الذين يعملون بها (يمارسونها).

في مدينة حلب هناك سوق مخصص (مكرس) لحماية المشغولات النحاسية يدوية الصنع و ذلك لضمان ألا تندثر هذه الحرفة القديمة . لقد اكتشفت قطع نحاسية في كل أرجاء المنطقة. يعود تاريخ بعض هذه القطع إلى العصر البرونزي ، حوالي ثلاثة آلاف عام قبل الحقبة المعاصرة . لقد حدد المؤرخون عدداً من الاستخدامات لهذه المادة (النحاس) و تتضمن صنع الأسلحة، المجوهرات و الزخارف . تعطينا هذه القطع (المشغولات) معلومات عن الطريقة التي تفاعلت و

the way ancient peoples lived and interacted.

The Aleppo Craftsmen Union is trying to revive this world-famous industry by establishing a training centre and promoting the local and regional trade of copper products. There are several processes involved in the production of copper goods, including cutting, welding and ornamentation. The metal then has to be thoroughly cleaned before it is suitable for sale. Currently, only a small handful of artisans continue to practise this craft. However, local people are being encouraged to learn the skills needed to make ornate copper items which will be suitable for commercial sale.

عاشت بها الشعوب القديمة .
يحاول اتحاد حرفيو حلب إحياء هذه الصناعة المشهورة عالمياً و ذلك بإنشاء مركز تدريب و تشجيع التجارة المحلية و الإقليمية للمنتجات النحاسية . هناك سلسلة عمليات تدخل في (تشارك) عملية إنتاج القطع (المنتجات) النحاسية ، منها القطع، اللحم و الزخرفة . ثم يجب أن يتم تنظيف المعدن بشكل (تام) كامل قبل أن يصبح صالحاً للبيع . حالياً ، حفنة صغيرة فقط من الحرفيين يستمرون بمزاولة هذه الحرفة . على كل حال ، يتم تشجيع الناس المحليين لتعلم المهارات المطلوبة لصنع قطع نحاسية مزخرفة تكون صالحة (مناسبة) لغرض التجارة (البيع التجاري) .

P – 53

3- Read the article again and answer these questions.

- a- Which of these statements about traditional Syrian crafts is not true?
- A. Syria has been an important trading centre for several millenia.
B. Nothing is being done to encourage traditional Syrian craftsmanship.
 C. Local artisans are threatened by increasing globalisation.
- b- Which of these statements about copper is not true?
- A. Copper artefacts have been found in the region dating to around 3000 BCE.
 B. Craftsmen must be taught special skills to create remarkable copper items.
C. The craft of making ornate copper goods has been totally destroyed by the modern world.

4- Complete sentences a–c with words from this list.

evidence trade civilisations traditional preservation

- a. Syria has been a centre of **trade** in the region for thousands of years.
 b. Several organisations are now helping to support the **preservation** of **traditional** crafts.
 c. Copper artefacts are used by historians as **evidence** of past **civilisations**.

P – 53

Vocabulary

1. Complete these statements using words from the box.

blow percussion pluck wood strum

a. a flute	You have to blow it .
b. a guitar	You can either pluck or strum it .
c. an oud and a violin	They are both made of wood .
d. a tablaha	This is a percussion instrument .

2. Complete these sentences using the correct form of these idioms.

blow (your / his) own trumpet change (your / his) tune drum something into someone face the music

- a. He's been telling lies to so many people. Eventually they will find out and he'll have to **face the music**.
- b. I can't stand the kind of big-headed person who **blows his own trumpet** all the time.
- c. He was against the idea of a holiday in Greece, but he **changed his tune** when he found out how cheap the flight was.
- d. The importance of knowing the difference between right and wrong is usually **drummed into** children by their parents at a very early age.

P – 54

Grammar

1- Complete these sentences using the correct form of *have something done*. You may also have to think of a verb.

- a. I couldn't repair my computer myself. I had to **have it repaired** by computer experts.
- b. We didn't build our own house. We **had it built** by a local construction company.
- c. Brides rarely make their own wedding dresses. They **have them made** by specialist dressmakers.
- d. People don't service their cars themselves; they **have them serviced** professionally two or three times a year.
- e. I've got a really bad toothache, so I'm going to the dentist this afternoon. I might have to **have a tooth taken out / have a tooth filled**.
- f. She tried mending her glasses, but she couldn't. She had to **have them mended** by the optician she had bought them from.
- g. Do you like this photograph of our family? We **had it taken** by a local photographer.

2- Now answer these questions, starting with 'No, ...'

- a. Did you redecorate the flat yourself? **No, we had it redecorated.**
- b. Did you plant the trees in your garden yourself? **No, we had them planted.**
- c. Are you going to service your own car? **No, I'm going to have it serviced.**
- d. Will you be able to test your own eyesight? **No, I'll have to have it tested (for me).**

3- What do the words in bold in the text on page 52 refer to:

- a. *its* (line 2) *its* refers to Syria
- b. *them* (line 12) *them* refers to traditional crafts
- c. *it* (line 21) *it* refers to metal

Write a brief biography of the Syrian calligrapher Mohammad Abdullah Ghannoum.

The calligrapher Mohammad Abdullah Ghannoum was born in Damascus in 1949. He graduated from the University of Damascus, Fine Arts Department, interior Design section in 1976. He took part in the International Exhibition of Calligraphy, which aims to popularize and promote the ancient art of calligraphy. Since 1985 Mohammad Abdullah Ghannoum has been taking an active part in international festivals and exhibitions of art, calligraphy and book-printing. He was honored at a number of international festivals including Kuwait, UAE, Berlin and Madrid.

ولد الفنان التشكيلي محمد عبدالله غنوم في دمشق عام ١٩٤٩. تخرج من جامعة دمشق كلية الفنون الجميلة ، قسم التصميم الداخلي في عام ١٩٧٦. شارك في المعرض العالمي للخط و الذي يهدف إلى نشر و الترويج لفن الخط القديم . منذ عام ١٩٨٥ كان محمد عبدالله غنوم يشارك بشكل فاعل في المعارض و المهرجانات الدولية للفنون ، الخط و طباعة الكتب . لقد تم تكريمه في العديد من المهرجانات الدولية بما في ذلك في الكويت ، الإمارات العربية المتحدة ، برلين و مدريد.

Activity book-page 56**Write a brief biography of a young person you know well**

الوصف هنا يتضمن عناصر الموضوع في كتاب النشاط

My best friend is Ahmad. He's tall with black hair and big eyes. He's very friendly and outgoing. Ahmad is interested in photography. He takes brilliant pictures. He is studying history at Tishreen University. Ahmad and I are really good friends, we are very similar in many ways. We both go to the gym and we often go out together. I like him because he is kind and generous.

صديقي المفضل هو أحمد . إنه طويل و له شعر أسود و عينان كبيرتان . لديه أختان . إنه ودود جداً و اجتماعي . أحمد مهتم بالتصوير . هو يلتقط صوراً رائعة . هو يدرس التاريخ في جامعة تشرين . أحمد و أنا صديقان جيدان حقاً ، نحن متشابهان بطرق عديدة . كلانا يذهب للنادي و نحن غالباً ما نخرج سوياً . أنا أحبه لأنه لطيف و كريم .

Progress Test 3

Module 3 test

Reading

1- Complete the article below with suitable words. Use each word only once

City or Country?

I was born in the country, and for the first eighteen years of (1) **my** life I lived there. My family's farm was in the middle of nowhere, five kilometres (2) **from** our nearest neighbours and ten from the nearest school, shops and post office. As a child, I enjoyed the open-air life, but when I was eighteen I went (3) **to** university and couldn't believe how incredible city life (4) **was**. In comparison with my life on the farm, my new life was exciting, challenging and very varied. I (5) **got** to know a lot of new people and I went to many places. (6) **Of** course everything moves much more quickly in the city, and that (7) **can** sometimes be stressful, but at least you know you're alive. In the country, you sometimes forget! Obviously, city life (8) **has** its disadvantages, like the noise, the traffic and the crowds of people, but these things don't worry (9) **me** too much. I don't drive, (10) **so** traffic problems and parking difficulties don't affect me. It only takes me ten minutes to get to the supermarket by taxi, whereas in the old days in the country, a shopping trip (11) **used** to take half a day. Maybe I'll want to go back to the peace and quiet of the country one day, (12) **but** for now I'm enjoying the hustle and bustle of city life.

المدينة أم الريف ؟

لقد ولدت في الريف و عشت هناك طوال الثمانية عشر عاماً الأولى من حياتي. كانت مزرعة عائلتي وسط اللا مكان ، تبعد خمسة كيلومترات عن أقرب جيران لنا و عشر كيلومترات عن أقرب مدرسة ، متاجر أو مكتب بريد . عندما كنت صغيراً استمتعت بالحياة في الهواء الطلق ، و لكن عندما أصبحت في الثامنة عشرة دخلت الجامعة و لم أستطع ان أصدق كم كانت حياة المدينة مختلفة . بالمقارنة مع حياتي في المزرعة، فإن حياتي الجديدة مثيرة ، كلها تحدي و متنوعة جداً . أصبحت أعرف الكثير من الناس الجدد و ذهبت إلى الكثير من الأماكن. طبعاً كل شيء يسير بسرعة كبيرة في المدينة و يمكن لذلك أن يكون مجهداً أحياناً و لكن على الأقل أنت تعرف أنك حي . في الريف قد تنسى ذلك.

من الواضح أن حياة المدينة مساوئها كالضجيج و الازدحام و حشود الناس و لكن تلك الأشياء لا تقلقني كثيراً . أنا لا أقود و لذلك فإن مشاكل السير و صعوبات الركن لا تؤثر بي. يستغرقني الوصول إلى السوبر ماركت عشر دقائق بسيارة الأجرة ، بينما في الأيام القديمة في الريف كانت رحلة التسوق تستغرق نصف يوم (نهار).

قد أرغب بالعودة إلى السلام و الهدوء في الريف ذات يوم و لكنني حالياً أستمتع بحياة الصخب و المرح في المدينة .

2- Read the article again and answer these questions.

a. Where did the writer live as a child?

He lived on a farm in the country, in the middle of nowhere

b. How far did he have to travel to go to school?

He had to travel 10 kilometres

c. Why did he first move to the city?

He moved there to go to university

d. How was his life different when he moved to the city?

His new life was exciting, challenging, and very varied. He got to know a lot of new people and went to many places.

e. What disadvantages of city life does the writer mention?

It can be stressful, and there is a lot of noise, traffic and crowds of people.

f. Why isn't the writer worried by traffic conditions in the city?

He hasn't got a car / He doesn't drive.

g. Why does he prefer shopping in supermarkets?

It's very quick (especially in comparison with long journeys in the country).

h. Does he think he will go back to live in the country?

He doesn't know. He thinks he may want to go back one day.

Grammar and Vocabulary**1. Report this conversation. Start each reported question with *I asked ...*, and each reply with *He said ...***

- a. I asked him what his name was.

He said it was Samer.

- b. I asked him where he lived.

He said he lived in the city centre.

- c. I asked him where he had lived before that.

He said he had lived in the country.

- d. I asked him if / whether he had enjoyed living there.

He said he had / he'd enjoyed it / living there most of the time.

- e. I asked him if / whether he was married.

He said he wasn't (married) yet, but that he was getting married next / the following month.

- f. I asked him what his job was.

He said he was a lecturer.

- g. I asked him if / whether he worked in a college

He said he didn't. / He said he worked in a university.

- h. I asked him what subject he taught.

He said he taught economics.

2. Complete the sentences with these words or phrases

but in comparison with whereas

- a. Big supermarkets sell everyday goods quite cheaply, **whereas / but** small shops often charge very high prices.
- b. **In comparison with** supermarkets, small shops offer customers a very personal service.
- c. It's expensive to live in the city **in comparison with** the country.
- d. Supermarket fruit may be cheap **but** it isn't always as tasty as fruit from a market.
- e. **Whereas** some older people enjoy a quiet life in the country, many young people prefer the excitement of city life.

3. Answer these questions, starting with 'No, ...'. Follow the example.

- a. Did Salah repair the computer himself? *No, he had it repaired.*
- b. Did Hussam take his own tooth out? **No, he had it taken out.**
- c. Are they going to build their own house? **No, they're going to have it built.**
- d. Did you put that TV aerial up yourself? **No, I had it put up.**
- e. Will you cut down those trees yourself? **No, I'll / we'll have them cut down.**
- f. Did Rana take those photos herself? **No, she had them taken.**

4. Choose the correct words in these sentences.

- a. Before we can sell the flat, we'll have to (*do it up / do without it*).
- b. The students had to (*make of / make up*) a story about their recent holiday.
- c. If everyone uses online banking, they'll (*do away with / do without*) banks.
- d. Are you happy with the decision you (*did / made*)?
- e. Was that (*bang / splash*) the sound of someone jumping into the swimming pool?
- f. We usually (*do / make*) the shopping at the weekend.
- g. Can you hear someone (*blowing / strumming*) a guitar?
- h. Let's turn the television off and have some peace and (*bustle / quiet*) for a change.
- i. He said he didn't want to swim, but he changed his (*music / tune*) when he saw the pool.
- j. People came from far and (*long / wide*) to see the exhibition.

5. One word in each of these conversations is wrong. Underline it and write the correct word at the end of the sentence.

- a A Is that your aunt?
B Yes, she's my father's **daughter**. **sister**
- b A What do you enjoy about city life?
B I think it's probably the hustle and **whistle**. **bustle**
- c A Do you take sugar in your tea?
B Yes, I've tried to **do away it**, but I can't. **do without it**
- d A Is that your grandfather?
B Yes, he's my mother's **mother**. **father**

Activity Book – P 60

Write about tourist attraction in your country (**An area of natural beauty**)

Slunfeh is an amazing resort place and is one of Syria's most beautiful mountainous areas. It is surrounded with deep valleys and wonderful forests. The highest point there is 1506 m above sea level. It looks on al-Ghab plain. The scene from the top is breath taking . Besides its natural beauty, Slunfeh has a lot of accommodations, hotels and restaurants. It is easy to go there either by car or microbus.

صلنفة مكان اصطياف رائع و هي إحدى أجمل مناطق سوريا الجبلية . إنها محاطة بالوديان العميقة و الغابات الجميلة . أعلى نقطة هناك تبلغ ١٥٠٦ م فوق مستوى سطح البحر . هي تطل على سهل الغاب . تستطيع أن ترى الكثير من المناظر الطبيعية الواسعة هناك . المنظر من الأعلى يخطف الأنفاس . بالإضافة إلى جمالها الطبيعي فإن صلنفة فيها الكثير من أماكن الإقامة ، الفنادق و المطاعم . من السهل الذهاب إلى هناك إما بالسيارة أو بالحافلة .

Activity Book – P 60

Write about tourist attraction in your country (**An interesting old building**)

The National Museum in Lattakia is an interesting old building. It has red tiles on its roof. It dates back to the time of the French mandate. It has an extended garden planted with some very old trees. The museum contains archaeological and historical objects. Lattakia Archeology Department uncovered an ancient underground tunnel beneath the building. Excavations is underway to find out whether it's connected to other tunnels or vaults.

المتحف الوطني في اللاذقية هو بناء ممتع قديم . له قرميد أحمر على سطحه . يعود تاريخه لفترة الانتداب الفرنسي . له حديقة ممتدة مزروعة ببعض الأشجار القديمة جداً . يحتوي المتحف تحفاً أثرية و تاريخية . قسم الآثار في اللاذقية كشف عن نفق قديم تحت الأرض تحت المتحف . الحفريات جارية لاكتشاف فيما إذا كان النفق متصلاً أو غير متصل بحجرات سرية أو سراديب .

Write about tourist attraction in your country (A historical town or city)

Palmyra is an amazing old city in the desert and is one of Syria's most famous places to visit. It was once a great city. If you visited the city, you would be astonished with its marvelous ruins and buildings such as the Arch of Triumph, the Amphitheatre and the temple of Bel. There is also a fantastic theatre and an interesting museum. I think that part of learning about Syria and its ancient history is knowing Palmyra.

تدمر هي مدينة قديمة مذهلة و هي واحدة من أهم أماكن الزيارة في سوريا . تقع في الصحراء ، إذا زرت المدينة سوف تتذهل بأثارها الرائعة و مبانيها الهامة مثل قوس النصر ، المسرح المدرج و معبد بعل . يوجد أيضاً مسرح رائع و متحف ممتع . أعتقد أن جزء من التعلم عن سوريا و تاريخها القديم يكمن في معرفة تدمر .

Activity book - p 65

Write an email to a friend whose family you are going on holiday with

Hi Sam

How are you? I know you've got brilliant plans for my visit and you're looking forward to showing me your country. Scotland is much colder than here so I'll need warm clothes. I think we'll go sightseeing during the day so I will bring my camera. I won't bring any books because there won't be any time to study. Looking forward to seeing you.

PS . Email and remind me if I forgot anything.

Ibrahim

مرحباً جاك
كيف حالك ؟ أنا أعرف أنه لديك خطط رائعة لزيارتي و أنك تتطلع لكي تريني بلدك . اسكوتلندا أبرد بكثير من هنا لذلك سأحتاج إلى ملابس دافئة . أعتقد أننا سوف نذهب لرؤية المناظر خلال النهار لذلك سوف أحضر كاميرتي . لن أحضر أية كتب لأنه لن يكون هناك أي وقت للدراسة . أتطلع لرؤيتك .
ملاحظة : راسلني الأسبوع القادم و ذكرني إذا نسيت شيئاً
ابراهيم

Unit – 10
Record breakers

P – 61

MODULE 4: Achievements**Reading****1. Read the article and find the answers to these questions.**

- How high is Mount Everest? **It is 8,848 m**
- How many people took part in the 9th British expedition to Everest? **Over 350**
- What did Hillary and Tenzing do at the summit of Mount Everest? **They took a photograph**
- Would you like to be a mountain climber? Why / why not? **Students' own answers**

Climbing Everest

In 1953, Edmund Hillary became the first person to reach the summit of Mount Everest, the highest mountain in the world at 8,848 m. Hillary, from New Zealand, and his Nepalese climbing companion, Tenzing Norgay were part of the 9th British expedition to attempt to reach the summit.

Over 350 people took part in the expedition that set out from Kathmandu in April 1953. There were Sherpas, doctors, cooks, porters and many others. There were eleven climbers in total and they climbed in groups of two.

Hillary and Norgay left the camp to climb to the summit on May 28th, and for much of the climb they had to overcome extreme cold, strong winds, dizzying heights and dangerously low levels of oxygen. Temperatures were below freezing point and they were at constant risk of getting frostbite. The two men did not have the same sophisticated equipment that is used today, and the extremely high altitude could have caused serious medical problems.

They made it to the top where they took the photograph that proved they had reached the highest point on earth. Hillary was a modest man and attributed his success to the whole team who supported him throughout the attempt. News reached the United Kingdom just before the coronation of Queen Elizabeth II and the team of climbers received special medals and international recognition.

Hillary was a born explorer and conquering Everest was the first in a series of achievements. He led an expedition to the South Pole and scaled several other peaks in the Himalayas. He later established the Himalayan Trust, an organisation committed to helping the Nepalese Sherpa communities. The trust has helped to build hospitals and schools and has improved communication and transport links to the area.

تسلق إفرست

في عام ١٩٥٣ أصبح إدموند هيلاري أول شخص يصل إلى أعلى قمة إفرست ، أعلى جبل في العالم بارتفاع ٨٨٤٨ متراً . كان هيلاري من نيوزيلندا و مرافقه في التسلق النيبالي تزنغ نورغاي جزء من البعثة البريطانية التاسعة التي كانت تحاول الوصول إلى القمة .

شارك أكثر من ٣٥٠ شخصاً في البعثة التي انطلقت من كاتماندو في نيسان عام ١٩٥٣ . كان هناك أناس من الشيربا (أناس من سكان الهمالايا يعملون غالباً كمرشدين في الجبال و يحملون أمتعة المتسلقين) ، أطباء طباطخين ، حمالين و العديد غيرهم . لقد كانوا أحد عشر متسلقاً في الإجمال و تسلقوا ضمن مجموعات من شخصين .

غادر هيلاري و نورغاي المخيم لتسلق القمة في الثامن و العشرين من أيار . و خلال معظم عملية التسلق توجب عليهما أن يتغلبا على البرد الشديد ، الرياح القوية ، المرتفعات الشاهقة و مستويات الأكسجين المنخفضة بشكل خطير . كانت درجات الحرارة تحت درجة التجمد و كانا تحت خطر دائم من التعرض للسهوة الصقيع . لم يكن لدى الرجلان نفس المعدات المتطورة المستخدمة اليوم ، كما أن الارتفاع المتطرف (شديد التطرف) كان يمكن أن يسبب مشاكل صحية خطيرة .

لقد نجحا في الوصول إلى القمة و التقطتا صورة أثبتت أنهما وصلا إلى النقطة الأعلى على سطح الأرض . كان هيلاري رجلاً متواضعاً و نسب (عزا) نجاحه إلى كل الفريق الذي دعمه خلال المحاولة . وصلت الأخبار إلى المملكة المتحدة تماماً قبل تتويج الملكة إليزابيث الثانية و لقد تلقى فريق المتسلقين ميداليات خاصة و شهرة (تقدير - اهتمام) عالمية .

لقد بزغ نجم (ولد) هيلاري آنذاك كمستكشف و قهر إفرست كان الأول في سلسلة من الإنجازات . لقد قاد بعثة (حملة) إلى القطب الجنوبي و تسلق عدة قمم أخرى في جبال الهمالايا . أسس لاحقاً (بنك) أمل الهمالايا و هي منظمة التزمت بمساعدة مجتمعات (السكان المحليين) الشيربا النيباليين . ساعدت هذه المنظمة في بناء المشافي و المدارس و طورت (حسنت) الاتصالات و طرق المواصلات إلى المنطقة .

2. Read the article again and say whether these statements are True or False.

a. Before Hillary, no one had managed to reach the summit of Mount Everest.

True

b. Hillary retired from mountain climbing after conquering Everest.

False: conquering Everest was the first in a series of achievements

c. The climbers attended the coronation of Queen Elizabeth II.

False: news of their success reached the United Kingdom just before the coronation

d. Hillary set up a charity to improve the lives of the Nepalese Sherpa communities.

True

3. Match these words from the article with their meanings.

ارتفاع	a altitude	3 height
متطرف - شديد	b extreme	5 very great or severe
أوكسجين	c oxygen	1 the gas we need to breathe
ثابت - مستقر	d constant	6 staying the same / not changing
لسعة الصقيع	e frostbite	2 injury caused to the body by very cold temperatures
الشيربا : سكان الهملايا	f Sherpa	4 Himalayan people famous for their skill as mountaineers

4. Which phrases are used in the article to mean the following:

a. pairs (3 words)	groups of two
b. first of many (4 words)	first in a series
c. fame (2 words)	international recognition

P – 62

Vocabulary

1- Choose the correct phrasal verb with *come* to complete these sentences.

- When my brother (*came round* / *came up*) after his operation, he felt fine.
- Why don't you (*come out* / *come over*) after school? We could visit my grandparents.
- It was cloudy all morning, but in the afternoon the sun (*came across* / *came out*).
- I've lost my watch. Can you let me know if you (*come across* / *come over*) it?

2- Complete these sentences with adjectives from the list. Sometimes you can use two words to complete a sentence. There are more words than you need.

afraid alight alike asleep burning frightened living similar sleeping

- We were driving home on the motorway yesterday evening when we came across a **burning** car.
- A family was standing by the side of the road. The mother was holding a **sleeping** baby in her arms. A woman came to ask if they needed any help.
- Two older children were standing next to the parents. They were very **afraid / frightened** of the fire. A policeman offered them some water.
- These two must have been twins, as they looked very **alike / similar**.

Grammar

Giving background information on past events

1. Write sentences giving background information about these past events. Use the information in brackets, and the verb in the past perfect simple or past perfect continuous.

a. Hillary climbed Mount Everest in 1953 as part of a British expedition. (attempt / several times before)

He had attempted it several times before.

b. By the time Hillary and Tenzing reached the top they were exhausted. (climb / for many days)

They had been climbing for many days.

c. Hillary returned to the Himalayas and set up a charity to help the local people. (befriend / many of the Sherpas)

He had befriended many of the Sherpas.

d. Hillary and Tenzing underwent thorough health checks when they returned to base camp. (experience / extremely cold conditions)

They had experienced extremely cold conditions.

e. Hillary and Tenzing raised a flag when they made it to the summit. (reach / highest point on earth)

They had reached the highest point on earth.

2. Choose the best verb form in these sentences.

a. Omar passed all his exams. He (*had revised* / *had been revising*) non-stop for a month.

b. They finished making Laila's dress a week before the wedding. They (*had made* / *had been making*) it for over a month.

c. I went to see Ali in hospital. He (*had broken* / *had been breaking*) his leg during a football match.

d. Everyone enjoyed the family celebration. Reem and her sons (*had made* / *had been making*) all the food themselves.

e. My uncle finally passed his driving test. He (*had taken* / *had been taking*) the test three times already.

f. I received a letter from Hiba yesterday. She (*had promised* / *had been promising*) to write since last year.

Writing

Writing an informal email

1. Read this email and answer these questions.

a. **What are the writer and his friend planning?**

They are planning a camping holiday

b. **What is the main purpose of the email?**

The main purpose of the email is to suggest a few last-minute things the friends might take with them.

Hi,
Thanks for the email. It's not long now till we go, is it? I've been making a few last-minute preparations this morning. I've decided what clothes and other personal things to take, but obviously we need to decide about the things we need for camping. I know we've already agreed on the essential things, like the tent, sleeping bags and first-aid kit, but there are other things we may or may not need. Do you think we should take our own cooking equipment? I expect we'll buy food mostly, but it might be a good idea to take a small gas cooker so that we can prepare our own food. And how about a large water container? If we don't take plenty of water with us, we might run out. That'd be awful if it gets very hot. Is there anything else we should take? Let me know what you think. I'm really looking forward to this break. I'll give you a ring tomorrow morning. See you soon.

مرحباً
أشكرك على رسالتك الإلكترونية . لم يبق وقت طويل لموعد ذهابنا، أليس كذلك ؟ كنت أجري (أقوم بـ) عدداً من استعدادات اللحظة الأخيرة هذا الصباح . قررت ما هي الملابس و الأشياء الشخصية الأخرى التي سأخذها ، و لكن من الواضح أننا سنحتاج أن نقرر ما هي الأشياء التي سنحتاجها من أجل التخييم .
أعرف أننا اتفقنا سابقاً بخصوص الأشياء الأساسية كالخيمة ، أكياس النوم و حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية و لكن هناك أشياء أخرى قد نحتاجها و قد لا نفعّل . هل تعتقد أننا يجب ان نأخذ معدات الطهو خاصتنا ؟ أتوقع أننا سوف نشترى الطعام في الأغلب و لكن قد تكون فكرة جيدة إذا أخذنا غاز طهو صغير لكي نتمكن من طهو طعامنا الخاص . و ماذا عن مستوعب كبير للماء ؟ إذا لم نأخذ كمية وافرة معنا ، فقد ينفذ منا . سيكون ذلك مريعاً إذا كان الطقس حاراً جداً . هل يوجد أي شيء آخر يجب أن نأخذه ؟ أعلمني ما هو رأيك .
أنا أتشوق لهذه الاستراحة (الإجازة) . سأعطيك رنة (إشارة) صباح الغد .
أراك قريباً

2. Make a note of the following:

a. Expressions the writer uses to make suggestions:

Do you think we should take ...?
How about a large water container?
It might be a good idea to take a small gas cooker

b. Informal words and phrases:

Hi / Thanks / It's not long till we go, is it?
That'd be awful / See you soon
All contracted verb forms show that this is informal language.

P – 65

Activity book - p 65

Write an email to a friend whose family you are going on holiday with

Hi Jack

How are you? What is the weather like with you? It's sunny here but the weather is very cold. Anyway, I know you've got brilliant plans for my visit and you're looking forward to showing me your country. I think Scotland is much colder than here so I'll need warm clothes. I think we'll go sightseeing and trekking during the day so I will bring my camera and comfortable shoes. I won't bring any books because there won't be any time to study. Looking forward to seeing you.

PS. Email me next week and remind me if I forgot anything.

Ibrahim

مرحباً جاك
كيف حالك ؟ كيف حال الطقس معك ؟ إنه مشمس هنا و لكن الطقس بارد جداً . على كل حال أنا أعرف أنه لديك خطط رائعة لزيارتي و أنك تتطلع لكي تريني بلدك . أعتقد أن اسكتلندا أبرد بكثير من هنا لذلك سأحتاج إلى ملابس دافئة . أعتقد أننا سوف نذهب لرؤية المناظر و السير في الجبال خلال النهار لذلك سوف أحضر كاميرتي و أحذية مريحة . لن أحضر أية كتب لأنه لن يكون هناك أي وقت للدراسة . أتطلع لرؤيتك .

ملاحظة : راسلني الأسبوع القادم و ذكرني إذا نسيت شيئاً

ابراهيم

Unit – 11 Future Projects

P – 66

Reading

1. Read this article about the Laerdal Tunnel to find the answers to these questions.

- When did the Mont-Blanc Tunnel open? **1965**
- How long is the Laerdal Tunnel? **24.5 kilometres**
- How long does it take to drive through the Laerdal Tunnel? **20 minutes**

Built for safety

Road tunnels, through mountains or under rivers and seas, make car journeys shorter and faster. Some of the long tunnels, like **those** through the Alps, were incredible engineering achievements when they were first built. For example, the 11-kilometre-long Mont Blanc Tunnel between France and Italy, which was opened in 1965, massively reduced journey times between the two countries. But in recent years, with the increase in freight traffic using tunnels, there have been some terrible accidents.

So when planners were designing the 24.5-kilometre Laerdal Tunnel in Norway, safety was one of **their** main concerns. People have known for some time that the main factors which cause accidents in long tunnels are tiredness and claustrophobia – a fear of being in small spaces. Drivers can easily fall asleep in tunnels because the view never changes – there is nothing to keep them awake. This can lead to accidents caused by vehicles driving into the sides of the tunnel. So experts, including psychologists, did research to find out how they could make the 20-minute journey through their new tunnel less monotonous. After experiments, **they** decided to build the tunnel in four sections with “halls” between them. The halls are wider and higher than the main tunnel and have special lighting similar to a sunrise. The idea is that drivers will feel refreshed as they drive through the halls.

The halls have two other purposes related to safety: if there is an accident on the road ahead, drivers can turn round in the halls and return the way they came. There are also lay-bys in the halls where drivers can stop and rest. The Laerdal Tunnel also has an efficient ventilation system which responds to the amount of traffic in the tunnel. Air pollution is monitored by staff in a control room.

إن أنفاق الطرق عبر الجبال و تحت الأنهار و البحار تجعل الرحلات بالسيارة أقصر و أسرع . بعض الأنفاق الطويلة كتلك التي تمر عبر جبال الألب كانت أعجوبةً هندسية (إنجازات هندسية هائلة) عندما بنيت لأول مرة . على سبيل المثال نفق مون بلان (الجبل الأبيض) الذي يبلغ طوله أحد عشر كيلومتراً بين فرنسا و إيطاليا و الذي افتتح عام ١٩٦٥ قلص زمن الرحلات بين البلدين بشكل هائل . و لكن في السنوات الأخيرة و مع ازدياد الشحن البري باستخدام الأنفاق ، كان هناك بعض الحوادث (الفضيحة) المريعة .

لذلك عندما كان المصممون يصممون نفق ليردال بطول ٢٤.٥ كيلومتر في النروج ، كانت السلامة إحدى اهتماماتهم الرئيسية. لقد عرف الناس منذ بعض الوقت أن العوامل الرئيسية التي تسبب الحوادث في الأنفاق الطويلة هي التعب و رهاب الأماكن الضيقة - و هو خوف المرء من أن يكون في مساحات صغيرة. يمكن للسائقين أن يغطوا بالنوم بسهولة في الأنفاق لأن المنظر لا يتغير أبداً - لا يوجد ما يبقيهم صاحين . قد يقود ذلك إلى حوادث تسببها المركبات التي تنحرف إلى جوانب النفق . لذلك فإن الخبراء بمن فيهم علماء النفس قاموا ببحوث ليعرفوا كيف يجعلون رحلة العشرين دقيقة عبر نفقهم الجديد أقل رتابةً (ملاً) . بعد الاختبارات ، قرروا بناء النفق بأربعة أقسام (قطاعات) و أروقة (فسحات) بينها . تلك الفسحات أوسع و أعلى من النفق الرئيسي و لها إنارة خاصة شبيهة بضوء شروق الشمس. الغاية (الفكرة) من ذلك أن يشعر السائقين بالانتعاش عندما يقودون عبر تلك الفسحات .

و لهذه الفسحات غايات أخرى مرتبطة بالسلامة : إذا وقع حادث على الطريق في الأمام، بإمكان السائقين أن يستديروا في الفسحة و يعودوا أدراجهم من الطريق الذي أتوا منه . و يوجد أيضاً مناطق توقف قصير على جانب الطريق في الفسحات حيث بإمكان السائقين أن يتوقفوا و يرتاحوا. كما أن لنفق ليردال نظام تهوية فعال يستجيب لحجم المرور (السير) في النفق. كما أن تلوث الهواء مراقب من قبل موظفين في غرفة التحكم.

2. Read the article again and answer these questions.

a. How is the Laerdal Tunnel different from other long tunnels?

The Laerdal Tunnel is divided into sections. It has halls. It was designed with safety in mind

b. Why were the designers of this tunnel especially worried about safety?

Because there had been serious accidents in other tunnels.

c. How are the halls different from the main part of the tunnel?

The halls are wider and higher, they have lay-bys, and different lighting.

d. What is the main purpose of the halls?

To provide a change of view for motorists so that they feel refreshed

e. What can drivers do if they find there is an accident on the road in front of them?

Turn round and drive back the other way.

3. Which words or phrases are used in the article to mean the following:

a. unbelievable	incredible
b. cut down, shortened	reduced
c. lorries and vans carrying things, not people	freight traffic
d. what you can see from a place	view
e. stop (someone) from going to sleep	keep (someone) awake

4. What are the dangers associated with long road journeys? What can be done to make such journeys safer? **Students' own answers**

Vocabulary

1- Choose the correct formal or informal word to complete these sentences.

- What a waste of time! I've spent the (*entire* / **whole**) afternoon fixing my computer.
- Since its (**inception** / *beginning*), this organisation has been at the forefront of research.
- A government spokesman said that the new airport would not be fully (**operational** / *ready to use*) until early in the new year.
- I'll ring you back in a few minutes – I'm just (*completing* / **finishing**) my lunch.
- Have you looked out of the window? They've started (*constructing* / **building**) the new block.
- The organisation hopes to be able to attract tourists to visit the many historical (**sites** / *places*) in the south-east of the country.
- Next year the college plans to (**extend** / *stretch*) the number of subjects it offers by 50%.

2- Complete the gaps in this text with words derived from the words in brackets.

Some of the most important (1) **historical** (history) sites in the world will be destroyed if sea levels rise as expected in the next 100 years. The (2) **destruction** (destroy) will be particularly serious in low-lying cities, such as Venice in Italy. Some of the (3) **buildings** (build) have already been damaged by the floods which regularly hit the city. In some places (4) **archeologists** (archaeology) are working against the clock to explore sites before they are lost beneath the water forever. Cities like London are planning the (5) **constructions** (construct) of new flood defence schemes.

بعض أهم المواقع التاريخية في العالم سوف تندثر إذا ارتفع منسوب البحر كما هو متوقع خلال المئة سنة القادمة.
الدمار سيكون كبيراً على وجه التحديد في المدن المنخفضة كالبندقية في إيطاليا. بعض الأبنية قد تضررت سابقاً بسبب الفيضانات التي تضرب المدينة بشكل منتظم. في بعض الأماكن يعمل علماء الآثار ضد الزمن (بعجلة) لاستكشاف مواقع قيل أن تضيع تحت الماء للأبد. مدن مثل لندن تخطط لبناء نظام دفاعي جديد ضد الفيضان.

Talking about processes

1. Choose the more appropriate verb in these sentences. Sometimes both answers are possible.

- a. The original Mont Blanc Tunnel (**was completed** / was being completed) in 1965.
- b. The tunnel (**was designed** / was being designed) to carry 450,000 vehicles a year. By 1997 it (was used / **was being used**) by over a million.
- c. Thirty-nine people (were killed / were being killed) in the tunnel fire which (**was started** / was being started) when a lorry caught fire.
- d. The driver stopped after smoke (**had been seen** / **was seen**) coming out of the lorry's engine.
- e. It was more than two days before the fire (**was put out** / was being put out) by fire fighters.

2. Rewrite these sentences using passive verbs where possible.

- a. After the tragic fire in the Mont Blanc Tunnel in 1999, everyone agreed that when they build tunnels in the future they should pay much more attention to safety.

After the tragic fire in the Mont Blanc Tunnel in 1999, everyone agreed that when tunnels were built in the future, much more attention should be paid to safety.

- b. When they were planning the Laerdal Tunnel, the designers decided that they would divide it into four sections, each six kilometres long.

When the Laerdal Tunnel was being planned, the designers decided that it would be divided into four sections, each six kilometres long.

- c. They thought that if they could construct large halls between the sections, this would make motorists' journeys more interesting and so seem quicker.

They thought that if large halls could be constructed between the sections, motorists' journeys would be made more interesting and so seem quicker.

- d. They made the halls wider than the rest of the tunnel and technicians fitted them with special lights.

The halls were made wider than the rest of the tunnel and they were fitted with special lights (by technicians).

- e. They believed that if they could ventilate the tunnel better, drivers would stay awake and this would cause fewer accidents.

They believed that if the tunnel could be better ventilated, drivers would stay awake and fewer accidents would be caused.

3. What do the words in bold in the text on page 66 refer to:

- a. *those* (line 2)
- b. *their* (line 9)
- c. *they* (line 16)

1. Read this report about preventing accidents in tunnels. How many different recommendations do the report writers make?

Safety in tunnels: Recommendations

In the light of a number of serious accidents and fires in tunnels in recent years, this report makes a number of recommendations which will reduce the risk of accidents and fires and minimise the impact of any that occur.

1- Escape routes

It is essential that drivers and their passengers are able to get out of a tunnel if there is an accident or fire. We have two recommendations which will help make this possible. Firstly, tunnels should be made wide enough in places to allow vehicles to turn round and go back the way they came. Secondly, there should be separate tunnels for pedestrians in case people need to walk to safety.

2- Accident Prevention

It may be impossible to eliminate accidents altogether, but we have several recommendations which will reduce this risk. Firstly, all road tunnels over 10 kilometres long should be divided into sections, with rest areas between the sections. Secondly, the decoration of each section should be different. This “change of view” will make the journey less monotonous for drivers and help to prevent them from falling asleep. Lastly, tunnels should be well ventilated.

3- Traffic management

Finally, the flow of traffic through tunnels should be regulated. This will improve overall safety. We believe that if only one vehicle is allowed into a tunnel every five seconds, there is less chance of a multi-vehicle accident. We also recommend that heavy lorries should be escorted by special safety vehicles.

If these recommendations are accepted, we believe that the accident rate in tunnels could be reduced by over 75%.

السلامة في الأنفاق : توصيات

على ضوء عدد من الحوادث الخطيرة و الحرائق في الأنفاق في السنوات الأخيرة ، فإن هذا التقرير يطرح عدداً من التوصيات التي ستقلل من خطر الحوادث و الحرائق و تخفض من أثر أي مما يحدث إلى الحد الأدنى.

١. طرق الهروب (النجاة)

من الضروري أن يكون السائقين و ركابهم قادرين على الخروج من النفق في حال وقع (كان) هناك حادث أو حريق . عندنا نصيحتين ستجعلان من ذلك ممكناً . أولاً يجب أن تبني الأنفاق عريضة كفاية في أماكن تسمح للمركبات بالاستدارة و العودة من الطريق الذي أتت (قدمت) منه . ثانياً يجب أن يكون هناك أنفاق منفصلة للمشاة في حال اضطر الناس للسير إلى بر الأمان.

٢. منع الحوادث

قد يكون من المستحيل إلغاء الحوادث بشكل كامل (نهائياً)، ولكن عندنا عدة توصيات (نصائح) ستقلل (تخفض) من هذا الخطر (المخاطرة) . أولاً كل أنفاق الطرق التي يبلغ طولها أكثر من عشرة كيلومترات يجب أن تقسم إلى قطاعات و فيها مناطق استراحة بين القطاعات . ثانياً يجب أن يكون ديكور كل قسم مختلفاً . هذا التغير في المنظر سيجعل الرحلة أقل رتابةً بالنسبة للسائقين و سوف يساعد في منعهم من أن يغطوا في النوم. في النهاية ، يجب أن تكون الأنفاق ذات تهوية جيدة.

٣. إدارة المرور (السير)

أخيراً، إن حركة السير عبر الأنفاق يجب أن تنظم. سيحسن ذلك السلامة بالإجمال . نحن نعتقد أنه إذا سُمح لمركبة واحدة فقط بالسير في النفق كل خمس ثوان، يكون هناك فرصة أقل لحادث متعدد المركبات . و نحن ننصح أيضاً (أنه يجب) أن تُرافق الشاحنات الثقيلة بمركبات سلامة خاصة.

إذا تم قبول هذه التوصيات ، فإننا نعتقد أن نسبة الحوادث في الأنفاق يمكن أن تتخفض بنسبة أكثر من ٧٥ %

3 What kind of language do the report writers use to:

- a ... make recommendations? *should*
 b ... make predictions? *will*
 c ... show the reader that they are moving on to a new point? *firstly, secondly, lastly, finally*
 d ... introduce their opinions? *we believe*

Write a report recommending ways to prevent accidents in tunnels .

The potential risks that are prevalent in road tunnels need to be taken seriously . In fact , there are several measures that can be done to reduce accidents in tunnels . First , drivers must follow instructions and speed limits . They have to maintain an adequate distance from the vehicle in front of them to avoid congestions . There must be emergency exits every 200 meters for fast self-rescue . Moreover , tunnels ventilation and automatic fire detectors are essential .

إن المخاطر المحتملة في أنفاق الطرق يجب أن تؤخذ بجدية . في الواقع هناك عدة إجراءات يمكن عملها لتخفيض الحوادث في الأنفاق . أولاً ، يجب على السائقين أن يتبعوا التعليمات و حدود السرعة . يجب عليهم أن يحافظوا على مسافة كافية عن المركبة التي أمامهم لتجنب الاختناقات المرورية . لا بد من وجود مخارج طوارئ كل ٢٠٠ متر من أجل إنقاذ ذاتي سريع . علاوة على ذلك، فإن تهوية النفق و الكاشفات الأتوماتيكية للنار هي أمر ضروري.

Unit – 12
Geniuses

P – 71 Reading

1. Read this article.

- a. Write the names of all the different mathematicians mentioned in the text.

The article mentions four different mathematicians: Musa al-Khawarizmi (mentioned twice in connection with arithmetic and algebra) Al-Nasawi Nasir-ud-din Toosi Omar Khayyam

Mathematical geniuses

In ancient times, Arab mathematicians led the world in their subject. This article looks at the origins of two branches of mathematics: arithmetic and algebra.

Arithmetic

Musa al-Khawarizmi from Khawarizm, who lived from 780 to 850 CE, was one of the world's greatest mathematicians. He wrote the earliest Islamic works on arithmetic and algebra, which were the main authority on the subject for many years. He made Greek and Hindu mathematical knowledge comprehensible to people of his time and supported the use of Hindu numerals. He is particularly famous for being the author of the oldest Arabic work on arithmetic known as *Kitabul Jama wat Tafriq*.

Another mathematician, Al-Nasawi, wrote *Al-Mughni Fil Hissab Al-Hindi* in which he explained fractions and other complex ideas in a modern way. He also introduced the decimal system in place of the sexagesimal system, which was based on the number sixty, rather than the number ten. A third scholar, Nasir-ud-din Toosi, wrote many valuable books, including *Al-mutawassat*, a concise explanation of arithmetic in Arabic and Persian. Arabic numerals were the greatest contribution made by Arab thinkers to mathematics. The most important of these numerals was zero, which was used in the Arab world at least 250 years before it was known in the West. Before the invention of zero it was necessary to arrange all figures in columns to differentiate between tens, hundreds, thousands, etc.

Algebra

The word *algebra* comes from the Arabic *Al-Jabr*. Al-Khawarizmi was the author of *Hisab Al-Jabr Wal Muqabala*, an exceptional work on algebra which includes analytical solutions to linear and quadratic equations. This work, which was translated into Latin in 1145, introduced algebra into Europe.

Better known as a poet and philosopher, Omar Khayyam, who lived from 1048 to 1133 CE, was also an astronomer and mathematician who wrote an excellent book on algebra. His work dealt mainly with geometric and algebraic solutions to equations.

عبارة الرياضيات

في الأزمنة القديمة ، تصدر الرياضيون العرب العالم في مادتهم، تنظر هذه المقالة في فرعين من الرياضيات : الحساب و الجبر.

الحساب

كان موسى الخوارزمي من خواريزم و الذي عاش من عام ٧٨٠ إلى ٨٥٠ ميلادي واحداً من أعظم رياضيين العالم . كتب أولى الأعمال الإسلامية في الحساب و الجبر و التي كانت المرجع الرئيسي للمادة طوال سنين عديدة . لقد جعل المعرفة الرياضية الإغريقية و الهندية مفهومة للناس في زمنه و أيد استخدام الأرقام الهندية . إنه مشهور على وجه الخصوص كونه مؤلف العمل العربي الأقدم في الحساب و هو كتاب الجمع و التفريق .

رياضي آخر هو النسوي كتب المغني في الحساب الهندي شرح فيه الكسور و أفكار معقدة أخرى بطريقة عصرية (حديثه) . كما أدخل أيضاً النظام العشري بدلاً من (مكان) النظام الستيني ، الذي كان مرتكزاً على الرقم ٦٠ أكثر منه على الرقم ١٠ . عالم ثالث هو نصير الدين الطوسي ألف العديد من الكتب القيمة منها المتوسط و هو شرح موجز للحساب بالعربية و الفارسية . كانت الأرقام العربية هي المساهمة الأعظم التي قدمها المفكرون العرب للرياضيات . الرقم الأهم في هذه الأعداد هو الصفر ، و الذي كان مستخدماً في العالم العربي قبل أن يعرفه الغرب بـ ٢٥٠ عاماً على الأقل . قبل اختراع الصفر كان من المهم ترتيب كل الأرقام بأعمدة للتمييز بين العشرات ، المئات ، الآلاف الخ .

الجبر

تأتي كلمة algebra من الكلمة العربية الجبر . كان الخوارزمي مؤلف حساب الجبر و المقابلة و هو عمل استثنائي عن الجبر و الذي يتضمن أجوبة تحليلية للمعادلات الخطية و التربيعية . أدخل هذا العمل و الذي تُرجم إلى اللاتينية عام ١١٤٥ الجبر إلى أوروبا .

إن عمر الخيام و المعروف أكثر كشاعر و فيلسوف عاش من عام ١٠٤٨ إلى ١١٣٣ ميلادي ، كان أيضاً فلكياً و رياضياً ألف كتباً ممتازة عن الجبر . تعامل عمله بشكل رئيسي مع الحلول الهندسية و الجبرية للمعادلات .

2. Read the article again and decide whether these statements are True or False.

- Musa al-Khwarizmi helped people to understand Greek and Hindu mathematics. **T**
- Musa al-Khwarizmi wanted people to use Arabic numerals. **F: Hindu numbers**
- The sexagesimal system is based on the number ten. **F: The sexagesimal system is based on the number sixty. The decimal system is based on the number ten.**
- Arab mathematicians found out about zero from European mathematicians. **F: The Europeans found out from the Arabs.**
- Algebra was introduced to the Europeans through the writings of Omar Khayyam. **F: Algebra was introduced to the Europeans through the writings of Al-Khwarizmi.**

3. Match these words from the article with their meanings.

مرجع - سلطة	a. authority	5 a book or person that has reliable knowledge or information
موجز - مختصر	b. concise	4 short and clear
مفهوم	c. comprehensible	2 possible to understand
يُميز	d. differentiate	1 to show the differences between
حل - جواب	e. solution	3 the answer to a (mathematical) problem

4. Complete these sentences with one word from the article.

- Arithmetic and algebra are two different **branches** of mathematics.
- Arithmetic** is about adding, subtracting, multiplying and dividing.
- Fractions** was one idea which Al-Nasawi explained in *Al-Mughni Fil Hissab Al-Hindi*.
- Arabic **numerals** included zero for the first time.

Vocabulary**1. Complete the gaps in these texts with words derived from the words in brackets.**

- My brother is (1) **talented** (talent) in many different ways. He is a (2) **mathematical** (mathematics) genius but also has great (3) **musical** (music) ability. The whole family was (4) **astonished** (astonish) when he won the first prize in a competition for young composers.
- My sister was never (1) **able** (ability) to do paint or draw well until a new and very (2) **skilful** (skill) teacher arrived at the school. Since then, my sister's progress has been (3) **amazing** (amaze), and art has grown in (4) **popularity** (popular) throughout the school.

2. Choose the correct preposition in these conversations.

- Are you good (**at** / *for*) maths?
 - I'm quite good, but I can't do calculations (**in** / *on*) my head very quickly.
- When did Omar Khayyam live?
 - (*At* / **From**) 1048 to 1133.
- Your brother's a brilliant musician, isn't he?
 - Yes, he showed musical ability (**at** / *in*) a very early age. In fact, he learnt to play complicated music (**at** / *on*) the piano when he was only five years old.

P – 73 Grammar
Adding information

1. Complete this story using the -ing form of verbs from this list.

apologise - expect - feel - leave - plan - think – wait

I left the office at midday, (1) **planning** to meet my friend Mazen for lunch. I arrived at our usual meeting place and waited, (2) **expecting** my friend to arrive at any minute. After about half an hour I began to worry, (3) **thinking** that Mazen might have been involved in an accident. I tried ringing him several times, eventually (4) **leaving** a message on his answering machine. After (5) **waiting** for nearly an hour, I decided that Mazen was not going to come, so I went back to work. I sat down at my desk, (6) **feeling** very hungry because I hadn't had any lunch. Then my phone rang. It was Mazen, (7) **apologizing** for having missed lunch. My fears were correct. He had had a car accident and he was phoning from the hospital.

غادرت المكتب في منتصف النهار مخططاً للقاء صديقي مازن وقت الغداء . وصلت إلى مكان لقاءنا المعتاد و انتظرت متوقعا وصول صديقي في أية لحظة . بعد حوالي نصف ساعة بدأت أقلق متوقعا (ظاناً) أن مازن قد يكون تعرض (تورط في) لحادث . حاولت الاتصال به عدة مرات و تركت (تاركاً) في النهاية رسالة على آلة الرد خاصته و بعد انتظار لمدة ساعة تقريباً، قررت أن مازن لن يأتي، لذلك عدت إلى العمل . جلست في مقعدي و كنت أشعر (شاعراً) بجوع شديد لأنني لم أتناول أي غداء. ثم رن هاتفي. لقد كان مازن و اعتذر (معتذراً) لتفويته الغداء. كانت مخاوفي في محلها (صحيحة) . لقد تعرض لحادث سيارة و كان يتصل من المشفى .

2. Rewrite the following as single sentences, using a verb in the -ing form.

a. An Indian man correctly calculated the square root of a six-digit number. He took 1 minute 3.8 seconds.

An Indian man correctly calculated the square root of a six-digit number, taking 1 minute 3.8 seconds.

b. An American holds the world record for sending a text message. He typed a text of 160 letters on his mobile phone in less than a minute.

An American holds the world record for sending a text message, **typing** a text of 160 letters on his mobile phone in less than a minute.

c. A 38-year-old German set a unicycle speed record for 100 m. He travelled this distance in 12.11 seconds.

A 38-year-old German set a unicycle speed record for 100 m, **travelling** this distance in 12.11 seconds.

d. In December 1998, a young British man broke the record for the most books balanced on the head. To do this he used skills he had developed as a builder.

In December 1998, a young British man broke the record for the most books balanced on the head, **using** skills he had developed as a builder.

e. He actually succeeded in carrying 62 books. The books weighed 98.4 kg.

He actually succeeded in carrying 62 books, **weighing** 98.4 kg.

f. An Indian man broke the world record for motionlessness. He stood still for 20 hours 10 minutes and 6 seconds in August 1997.

An Indian man broke the world record for motionlessness, **standing** still for 20 hours, 10 minutes and 6 seconds in August 1997.

P – 74

Writing a set of instructions

1. The instructions below are written in the wrong order. Number the paragraphs a-g in the correct order, 1-7.

How to make a wide-brimmed hat

c First, collect together all the materials you will need. These are a tape measure, a pencil, a ruler, a pair of scissors, a roll of sticky tape, a large piece of card, about 60 cm square and a smaller piece of card, about 10 cm x 65 cm.

f Measure your head with the tape measure. Then measure the smaller piece of card to the same size. Stick one end of the card to the other end. This is the 'head part' of the hat.

b Very gently stick the head part of the hat to the middle of the large piece of card. Don't stick it too firmly. Draw a circle around it. Then detach the head part and put it away until later.

g Use the ruler and pencil to draw a second circle 15 cm outside the first circle.

a Now use the ruler and pencil to make marks 2 cm inside the small circle, to draw an even smaller circle. Join the marks together. Now you have three circles.

e Cut out the biggest circle and the smallest circle. Cut little tabs around the edge of the remaining circle. Pull the tabs up.

d Place the head part on top of the first circle you drew. Fold and stick the tabs inside it. Well done! You've finished! Now you have a wide-brimmed hat!

كيف تصنع قبعة ذات حواف (أطراف) عريضة

C - أولاً أحضر (اجمع) كل المواد التي ستحتاجها ، و هي شريط قياس ، قلم رصاص ، مسطرة ، مقص ، بكرة شريط لاصق ، قطعة كبيرة من الكرتون ، حوالي ٦٠ سم مربع و قطعة أصغر من الكرتون حوالي ١٠ x ٦٥ سم .

F - قس رأسك باستخدام شريط القياس ، ثم قم بقياس قطعة الكرتون الأصغر بنفس القياس . ألصق نهاية الكرتونة بالنهاية الأخرى هذا هو 'جزء الرأس' من القبعة .

B - ألصق بلطف جزء من رأس القبعة بمنتصف قطعة الكرتون الكبيرة . لا تضغط عليها بشدة . ارسم دائرة حولها ، ثم حرر (افصل) جزء الرأس و أبعدته حتى وقت آخر .

G - استخدم المسطرة و قلم الرصاص لرسم دائرة ثانية تبعد ١٥ سم عن الدائرة الأولى .

A - الآن استخدم المسطرة و قلم الرصاص لتصنع علامات (إشارات) ٢ سم باتجاه داخل الدائرة الصغيرة . اطو العلامات سوياً . لديك الآن ثلاث دوائر .

E - قص الدائرة الأكبر و الدائرة الأصغر . قم بقص عروات صغيرة (أسطح) حول حافة الدائرة المتبقية . قم بسحب العروات للأعلى .

D - ضع جزء الرأس في أعلى الدائرة الأولى التي رسمتها . اطو و ألصق العروات إلى داخلها . أحسنت ! انتهيت ! صار لديك الآن قبعة ذات حواف عريضة (واسعة) .

2. Read the instructions again carefully and answer these questions.

a. Which words in the text gave you clues about how to order the paragraphs? Give examples.

First (paragraph c)

Head part (paragraph f)

The head part / a circle (paragraph b)

A second circle (paragraph g)

An even smaller circle (paragraph a)

Cut out the biggest circle (paragraph e)

You've finished (paragraph d)

b. In what form are most of the 'instructing' verbs? **The imperative.**

c. How does the writer tell the reader not to do something? **By using the negative; 'Don't'**

d. In which paragraph does the writer congratulate the reader? Why? **Paragraph d: because the task is finished.**

Activity Book – P 75**Write your own set of instructions for a simple activity****How to make tea**

If you want to make a fine cup of tea, pour some fresh water into a pot. Put the teapot on the cooker. After the water boils, turn off the heat and let the water cool for 30 seconds. Now you can put the recommended amount of tea leaves in your teapot and cover it again with the lid. Leave it for three to five minutes. Depending on your taste, you may want to serve tea with sugar or honey.

إذا كنت تريد ان تصنع كأساً من الشاي اللذيذ ، اسكب بعض الماء المفلتر في إبريق . ضع الإبريق على الموقد . بعد أن يغلي الماء أطفئ الحرارة و دع الماء يبرد لثلاثين ثانية . الآن تستطيع أن تضع المقدار المناسب من أوراق الشاي في الإبريق و تغطيه بالغطاء اتركه لكي ينتقع من ثلاث إلى خمس دقائق . و حسب ذوقك بإمكانك أن تقدم الشاي مع السكر أو العسل .

Activity Book – P 75**How to send the same email to several people**

There are many ways to send an email to several recipients. First, sign up for your email. click on Bcc field. Then type the email addresses of all intended recipients in the Bcc field. Make sure you separate the addresses by commas. Now type the message and its subject, and finally click Send. However you can also send copies from an email to additional people by specifying multiple addresses in the "To" field.

هناك عدة طرق لإرسال الرسالة الإلكترونية لعدة متلقين . أولاً ، انقر على حقل Bcc . ثم اكتب عناوين الرسالة لكل المتلقين المستهدفين في حقل Bcc . احرص أن على ان تفصل العناوين بفواصل . الآن اكتب الرسالة و موضوعها ، و أخيراً انقر على إرسال Send . إحدى مزايا Bcc هي أن أي من المتلقين في سطر Bcc لا يكون مرئياً للآخرين على البريد الإلكتروني . على كل حال ، بإمكانك أيضاً أن ترسل نسخاً من البريد الإلكتروني لأناس إضافيين عبر تحديد عدة عناوين في حقل To (إلى) .

Activity Book – P 75**How to ride a bicycle**

If you want to learn how to ride a bicycle, you have to find a good place where there is no traffic to worry about. You have to wear a helmet and protection for the knees because you might fall many times before you succeed. First put one leg on a pedal then try gliding down gentle slopes. Try steering and use brakes if necessary. Allow the bike to go naturally in the flat area. And finally, try to use the pedals.

إذا أردت أن تتعلم كيف تقود دراجة ، عليك أن تجد مكاناً جيداً حيث لا يوجد حركة مرور لتقلق منها . يجب عليك أن ترتدي خوذة و وقاية للركبتين لأنك قد تقع عدة مرات قبل أن تنجح . أولاً ضع قدم واحدة على الدواسة ثم حاول الانزلاق نزولاً في المنحدرات الخفيفة . حاول استخدام المقود . و استخدم المكابح إذا كان ذلك ضرورياً . اسمح للدراجة بأن تسير بشكل طبيعي في المنطقة المستوية . و أخيراً حاول أن تستخدم الدواستين (البدالتين) .

Activity Book – P 75**How to use a dictionary**

Dictionaries enable us to look up the meaning of English words in our language. If you want to look up an English word, first you have to find the section of the dictionary with the first letter of your word. Of course, you have to know the alphabetical order because you will have to look at the second letter and so on. Read the guide words. Then scan down the page for your word.

تمكننا القواميس من إيجاد معاني الكلمات الانكليزية في لغتنا . إذا أردت أن تبحث عن معنى كلمة انكليزية أولاً يجب عليك أن تجد ذلك القسم من القاموس الذي يحتوي الحرف الأول من كلمتك . طبعاً يجب أن تعرف الترتيب الأبجدي للحروف لأنه سيتوجب عليك أن تنظر إلى الحرف الثاني و هكذا . اقرأ كلمات الدلالة . ثم ابحث نزولاً في الصفحة عن كلمتك .

Activity Book – P 75**How to transfer a photograph from a camera to a computer then print it**

If you want to transfer photographs from a camera to your computer. First of all, connect the camera to your PC by using the camera's USB cable. Turn on the camera. In the Auto Play dialog box that appears, click import pictures using windows. Now the photos are on your computer and you can choose a picture to print. You can click on the printer icon, and it will be printed.

إذا أردت أن تنقل الصور من كاميرتك إلى حاسوبك ، قبل كل شيء ، وصل الكاميرا مع حاسوبك الشخصي باستخدام كابل USB العائد للكاميرا . شغل الكاميرا . في مربع التشغيل التلقائي الذي يظهر ، انقر على استيراد صور باستخدام نظام ويندوز . الآن الصور على حاسوبك و بإمكانك ان تختار صورة لتطبعها . تستطيع أن تنقر على رمز الطابعة و سوف تطبع .

Activity Book p – 79**Write an essay about people who risk their lives climbing mountains**

The debate around ethics on mountaineering has raged recently. Some people say that mountaineering stands for toughness and attitude. They claim that mountaineers are adrenaline addicts who like the joy and thrill. On the other hand, others say that mountaineers are crazy and selfish because they risk their lives for nothing. They don't think about their families. To me, there is no justification for leaving someone who cares for you just to put yourself at risk.

إن الجدل حول أخلاقية تسلق الجبال قد استعر مؤخراً . يقول بعض الناس أن تسلق الجبال يمثل الصلابة (القوة) ، الجهد و الموقف . هم يدعون أن متسلقي الجبال هم مدمني أدريالين يحبون بهجة و إثارة التسلق . و من ناحية أخرى ، يقول آخرون أنهم مجانين و انانيين لأنهم يعرضون حياتهم للخطر من أجل لا شيء . هم لا يفكرون بعائلاتهم . بالنسبة لي ، لا يوجد حقاً ما يبرر ان تترك شخصاً ما يحبك لتضع نفسك في خطر .

Progress test 4

Reading

1. Complete the article below with suitable words. Use each word only once.

Everest: The final challenge

Until 1953, nobody (1) **had** climbed Mount Everest, the highest mountain in the world. Then in 1953, the mountaineer Edmund Hillary and the Nepalese Tenzing Norgay succeeded (2) **in** reaching the summit. In the next thirty years there were other Everest 'firsts', including the first solo climb and the first climb (3) **by** a woman. All these people had taken bottles of oxygen (4) **to** help them climb, but many mountaineers wanted to climb using their natural ability, without oxygen. Two of these (5) **were** Reinhold Messner and Peter Habeler. In 1975, they amazed people by climbing Gasherbrum, the 11th highest mountain in (6) **the** world, without oxygen.

When Messner and Habeler started planning to climb Everest without oxygen, other climbers called (7) **them** foolish. They warned them that the oxygen levels (8) **at** the top of Everest were so low that breathing would (9) **be** difficult, and that the men would risk brain damage if they did this. However, Messner and Habeler did (10) **not** listen and made their first attempts in April 1978. After two failures, they nearly gave up but decided to make a final attempt.

At these very high altitudes, with so little oxygen in the air, everything the men did took much longer (11) **than** normal. Every few metres, they fell down exhausted and had to rest. Eventually, at about 2 pm (12) **on** May 8th 1978, Messner and Habeler became the first men to reach the summit of Everest without oxygen.

حتى عام ١٩٥٣ لم يتسلق أحد قمة إفرست الجبل الأعلى في العالم . ثم في عام ١٩٥٣ نجح المتسلق إدموند هيلاري و النيبالي تنزنغ نورغاي في الوصول إلى القمة . و في السنوات الثلاثين التالية كان هناك أوائل آخرين (من نوع آخر) لإفرست بمن فيهم التسلق الأحادي (المنفرد) الأول و أول تسلق لإمرأة .

أخذ جميع هؤلاء الناس اسطوانات أكسجين معهم لتساعدهم في التسلق ، و لكن أراد العديد من متسلي الجبال التسلق مستخدمين مقدرتهم الطبيعية بدون الأكسجين . رينهولد مسنر و بيتر هابيلر كانا اثنين من هؤلاء (المتسلقين) . في عام ١٩٧٥ أذهلا الناس بتسلقهما غاشبروم بدون أكسجين و هو الجبل رقم ١١ في العالم من ناحية الارتفاع (بدون أكسجين) . عندما بدأ مسنر و هابيلر بالتخطيط لتسلق إفرست ، نعتهما متسلقون آخرون بالأحمقين . لقد حذروهما أن نسبة (مستوى) الأكسجين عند قمة إفرست منخفضة جداً بحيث يكون التنفس صعباً ، و أن الرجلان سيجازفان بتعريض (سيعرضان) دماغيهما للتلف إذا قاما بذلك . على كل حال ، لم يستمع مسنر و هابيلر لذلك و قاما بمحاولتهما الأولى في شهر نيسان عام ١٩٧٨ . و بعد فشلين استسلما تقريباً و لكن قررا أن يقوموا بمحاولة أخيرة .

على ارتفاعات شاهقة كتلك، و بوجود كمية قليلة جداً من الأكسجين في الهواء ، فإن كل شيء قام به الرجلان استغرق أطول بكثير من المعتاد (الطبيعي) . كل عدة أمتار سقطا من الإنهاك و كان عليهما أن يستريحا . في النهاية (أخيراً) في حوالي الساعة الثانية ظهراً في الثامن من أيار عام ١٩٧٨ أصبح مسنر و هابيلر أول رجلين يصلان قمة إفرست بدون أكسجين .

2. Read the article again. Are these statements True or False?

a. The first woman climbed Everest before 1953.

False: between 1953 and 1983

b. Until the mid-1970s all mountaineers had used oxygen when they were climbing.

True

c. Other climbers advised Messner and Habeler to use oxygen when climbing Everest.

True

d. Messner and Habeler took the advice they were given.

False: they did not listen

e. Messner and Habeler climbed Everest at the second attempt.

False: the third attempt

f. At the top of high mountains the air does not have much oxygen in it.

True

P - 77

Grammar and Vocabulary

1. Choose the correct verb to complete these sentences.

- Before 1953, people (*had tried* / ***had been trying***) to reach the summit of Everest for many years.
- Before Messner and Habeler, no one (***had attempted*** / *had been attempting*) to climb Everest without oxygen.
- Messner and Habeler ignored the warnings that other climbers (***had given*** / *had been giving*) them.
- In May 1978, Messner and Habeler (***had already made*** / *had already been making*) two unsuccessful attempts to reach the summit.
- Just before they reached the summit, they (*had fallen down* / ***had been falling down***) every few metres.
- Three years earlier they (***had successfully climbed*** / *had successfully been climbing*) Gasherbrum without oxygen.

2. Complete these conversations using the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Choose the best tense and decide whether to use the active or the passive. Pay attention to the punctuation.

a

A How is your car after the accident?

B Well, it still goes all right, but it's badly scratched – it (***have to*** / ***repaint***). ***It will have to be repainted.*** / ***It has to be repainted.***

A What about the other car?

B Unfortunately, it was so badly damaged it (***could*** / ***not repair***). ***It couldn't be repaired.***

b

A (you / fill in) the application form for that job yet? ***Have you filled in the application form for that job yet?***

B Yes, I did it yesterday.

A Don't forget, it (***have to*** / ***post***) before next Tuesday. ***It has to be posted*** / ***It will have to be posted before next Tuesday.***

c

A Why do these photos look so terrible?

B Because you (***take***) them facing the sun. ***Because you took them facing the sun.***Photos (***should*** / ***always take***) with the sun behind you. ***Photos should always be taken with the sun behind you.***

d

A Were you expecting a letter?

B Yes, but it (***could*** / ***send***) to the wrong address. ***It could have been sent to the wrong address.***

P – 78

3. Rewrite the following as single sentences, using a verb in the -ing form. Pay particular attention to punctuation.

- Muhanad trained hard for the competition. He ran 3,000 metres every evening for six months.

Muhanad trained hard for the competition, running 3,000 metres every evening for six months.

- He was careful about his diet, and ate only healthy food.

He was careful about his diet, eating only healthy food.

- As a result he became slimmer and fitter. He lost 10 kg while he was training.

As a result he became slimmer and fitter, losing 10 kg while he was training.

- He managed to get plenty of rest. He slept for eight hours every night.

He managed to get plenty of rest, sleeping for eight hours every night.

- On the day of the race he felt very confident and got up at six o'clock in the morning.

On the day of the race he felt very confident, getting up at six o'clock in the morning.

- Fortunately, he was second in the race. He came in a fifth of a second behind the winner.

Fortunately he was second in the race, coming in a fifth of a second behind the winner.

4. Complete these sentences with words formed from the words in brackets.

- My brother is a very **talented** basketball player (talent). His greatest strength is his **ability** to change direction quickly (able).
- Only certain kinds of people have **mathematical** brains (mathematics).
- The earthquake caused terrible **destruction** across the country (destroy).
- Water sports are increasing in **popularity** every year (popular).
- Many important **historical** events have taken place here in the last 500 years (history).
- She's very **skilful** at drawing and painting (skill).

5. Complete sentences a–f with the correct form of one of the words from this list.

afraid alike alive come down come over consume

- No two people are completely **alike**. Everyone is an individual.
- We haven't seen you for ages. You must **come over** and see us at the weekend.
- There's no need to be **afraid** of flying. Air travel is the safest form of transport.
- In the wild, animals **consume** only as much food as they need.
- Mobile phones **are coming down / have come down** in price very quickly. They are half the price they were three years ago.
- That was a terrible accident. The driver's lucky to be **alive**.

Activity Book p – 79

Write an essay about people who risk their lives climbing mountains

The debate around ethics on mountaineering has raged recently. Some people say that mountaineering stands for toughness and attitude. They claim that mountaineers are adrenaline addicts who like the joy and thrill. On the other hand, others say that mountaineers are crazy and selfish because they risk their lives for nothing. They don't think about their families. To me, there is no justification for leaving someone who cares for you just to put yourself at risk.

إن الجدل حول أخلاقية تسلق الجبال قد استعر مؤخراً . يقول بعض الناس أن تسلق الجبال يمثل الصلابة (القوة)، الجهد و الموقف . هم يدعون أن متسلقي الجبال هم مدمني أدريالين يحبون بهجة و إثارة التسلق . و من ناحية أخرى، يقول آخرون أنهم مجانين و انانيين لأنهم يعرضون حياتهم للخطر من أجل لا شيء . هم لا يفكرون بعائلاتهم . بالنسبة لي، لا يوجد حقاً ما يببرر ان تترك شخصاً ما يحبك لتضع نفسك في خطر .